

TextGrid TEI Baseline Encoding

Marc Wilhelm Küster

1 Baseline Encoding

2 Introduction

The baseline encoding schema saw the light of the day in the TextGrid project. Its primary *raison d'être* is to serve as a reference format for cross-corpus searches on which project specific encodings can be mapped. As such it must be rich enough to capture major structural elements of importance in projects from a different disciplines and on different genres, yet simple enough to be treatable by the search engine.

The encoding has since seen uses beyond its original use case.

The first formal draft for the baseline encoded as an ODD file was released in May 2008. A revised version was published in November 2008 and has since gone through a number of minor revisions. Consult the svn for a full tracking of changes.

3 The formal schema

3.1 Macros

macro.anyXML defines a content model within which any XML elements are permitted

Module tei

Used by macro.anyXML

Declaration

```
macro.anyXML =
  element * - (d13e1:* | d21e7a1480:egXML)
  {
    attribute * { text }*,
    ( text | macro.anyXML )*
  }
```

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials.

Module tei

Used by figDesc witness

Declaration

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements.

Module tei

Used by camera caption cell corr def docEdition emph gen head hi imprimatur l orig p pos ref reg rhyme sic sound subc surplus tech title titlePart unclear usg

Declaration

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )*
```

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements.

Module tei

Used by abbr actor addName addrLine affiliation author birth catchwords colophon country dateline death docAuthor docDate edition editor education expan explicit extent faith finalRubric floruit foreign forename genName heraldry incipit label material nameLink nationality objectType occupation orgName origPlace persName pubPlace publisher residence role roleDesc roleName rs rubric salute secFol sex signatures signed socecStatus speaker stamp summary surname term textLang trailer watermark wit witDetail

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents.

Module tei

Used by age authority langKnown

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements.

Module tei

Used by accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation handNote item layout musicNotation note origin provenance q quote scriptNote source stage support surrogates typeNote view

Declaration

```
macro.specialPara =  
  (  
    text  
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter  
    | model.divPart    | model.global      )*
```

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module tei

Used by c collection depth dim geogFeat height idno institution locus mapping msName
offset repository value width

Declaration `macro.xtext = (text | model.gLike)*`

3.2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address.

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike
[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink
roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country
settlement]] idno rs] addrLine

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or e-mail address.

Module tei

Used by location model.pPart.data

Members address affiliation

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description.

Module tei

Used by cit climate event location org place population sourceDesc terrain trait
model.inter

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct msDesc

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description.

Module tei

Used by bibl

Members model.imprintPart [pubPlace publisher] model.respLike [author editor] edition
extent msIdentifier

model.castItemPart groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor's name.

Module tei

Used by castItem

Members actor role roleDesc

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation.

Module tei

Used by choice

Members abbr corr expan orig reg sic unclear

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements.

Module tei

Used by body castList div epigraph epilogue performance postscript prologue set

Members model.divPart [model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] figure lg sp] model.entryLike [entry superEntry] model.inter [model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblStruct msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike [label] model.listLike [list listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit] model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q] model.stageLike [camera caption move sound stage tech view] castList table]

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions.

Module tei

Used by imprint model.pPart.data

Members date time

model.dimLike groups elements which describe a measurement forming part of the physical dimensions of some object.

Module tei

Used by dimensions

Members depth height width

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division.

Module tei

Used by body div epilogue group lg list performance prologue

Members model.divBottomPart [closer postscript signed trailer] model.divWrapper [byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division.

Module tei

Used by back front model.divBottom

Members closer postscript signed trailer

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body div front

Members div

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions.

Module tei

Used by macro.specialPara model.common

Members model.lLike [l] model.pLike [p] figure lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division.

Module tei

Used by body castList div epilogue group lg list performance prologue

Members model.divTopPart [model.headLike [head] opener] model.divWrapper [byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute]

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division.

Module tei

Used by model.divTop

Members model.headLike [head] opener

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division.

Module tei

Used by model.divTop model.divBottom

Members byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

model.editorialDeclPart groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by editorialDecl

Members normalization

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed.

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

Members emph foreign term title

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside `<encodingDesc>` and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by encodingDesc

Members charDecl editorialDecl variantEncoding

model.entryLike groups elements structurally analogous to paragraphs within dictionaries.

Module dictionaries

Used by model.common

Members entry superEntry

model.entryPart groups elements appearing at any level within a dictionary entry.

Module tei

Used by cit nym

Members def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc superEntry usg xr

model.entryPart.top groups high level elements within a structured dictionary entry

Module tei

Used by re sense

Members cit def etym form gramGrp re usg xr

Note Members of this class typically contain related parts of a dictionary entry which form a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

model.featureVal groups elements which represent feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by f

Members model.featureVal.complex [fs] model.featureVal.single [symbol]

model.featureVal.complex groups elements which express complex feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by model.featureVal

Members fs

model.featureVal.single group elements used to represent atomic feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by model.featureVal

Members symbol

model.formPart groups elements allowed within a <form> element in a dictionary.

Module dictionaries

Used by form

Members model.gramPart [model.morphLike [gen] gramGrp pos subc usg] form

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter.

Module tei

Used by back front

Members model.frontPart.drama [castList epilogue performance prologue set] titlePage

model.frontPart.drama groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only.

Module tei

Used by model.frontPart

Members castList epilogue performance prologue set

model.gLike groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

Module tei

Used by bibl byline castItem closer date docImprint etym f form gramGrp lem opener origDate pc rdg re sense time w xr macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext

Members g

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text.

Module tei

Used by address app back bibl body byline castGroup castItem castList change cit closer date div docImprint docTitle epigraph epilogue etym figure form front gramGrp group imprint lem lg list msItem opener origDate performance person postscript prologue rdg re sense set sp table text time titlePage w xr macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara

Members model.global.edit [addSpan delSpan gap] model.global.meta [fLib fs index] model.milestoneLike [anchor cb gb lb milestone pb] model.noteLike [note witDetail]

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function.

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members addSpan delSpan gap

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements.

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members fLib fs index

Note Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

model.gramPart groups elements allowed within a <gramGrp> element in a dictionary.

Module dictionaries

Used by gramGrp model.formPart

Members model.morphLike [gen] gramGrp pos subc usg

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects.

Module tei

Used by char figure formula glyph model.phrase

Members formula graphic

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module tei

Used by castGroup climate event figure listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit msDesc msPart org place population set table terrain trait model.divTopPart

Members head

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed.

Module tei

Used by w model.highlighted

Members hi

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct.

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members model.emphLike [emph foreign term title] model.hiLike [hi]

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints.

Module tei

Used by imprint model.biblPart

Members pubPlace publisher

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by change etym form gramGrp lem rdg xr macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common

Members model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblStruct msDesc] model.egLike model.labelLike [label] model.listLike [list listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit] model.qLike [model.quoteLike [cit quote] q] model.stageLike [camera caption move sound stage tech view] castList table

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module tei

Used by lg sp model.divPart

Members l

model.lPart groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only.

Module tei

Used by w model.phrase

Members caesura rhyme

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module tei

Used by climate event location org place population terrain trait model.inter

Members label

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources.

Module tei

Used by change macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

Members model.emphLike [emph foreign term title] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address affiliation] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [depth dim geo height width] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country settlement]] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial [choice] model.pPart.msdesc [catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark] model.ptrLike [ref]

model.listLike groups list-like elements.

Module tei

Used by sourceDesc model.inter

Members list listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning.

Module tei

Used by location model.pPart.data

Members depth dim geo height width

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems.

Module tei

Used by entry model.global

Members anchor cb gb lb milestone pb

model.morphLike groups elements which provide morphological information within a dictionary entry.

Module dictionaries

Used by etym model.gramPart

Members gen

model.msItemPart groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

Module tei

Used by msItem

Members model.msQuoteLike [colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title] model.quoteLike [cit quote] model.respLike [author editor] bibl decoNote filiation msItem msItemStruct textLang

model.msQuoteLike groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

Module tei

Used by model.msItemPart

Members colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

Used by org model.addrPart model.pPart.data

Members model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country settlement]] idno rs

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies.

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike

Members orgName persName

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements.

Module tei

Used by adminInfo biblStruct char climate event glyph location monogr msItemStruct notesStmt org place population terrain trait model.global

Members note witDetail

model.offsetLike groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name.

Module tei

Used by location model.nameLike

Members geogFeat offset

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by availability binding bindingDesc climate custodialHist decoDesc editorialDecl encodingDesc event figure handDesc history langKnowledge layoutDesc msContents msDesc msItem msItemStruct msPart normalization nym objectDesc org person personGrp physDesc place population publicationStmt recordHist relationGrp

scriptDesc seal sealDesc seriesStmnt sourceDesc sp supportDesc terrain trait typeDesc
model.divPart

Members p

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter.

Module tei

Used by back front

Members byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head
titlePart

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data.

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase model.limitedPhrase

Members model.addressLike [address affiliation] model.dateLike [date time]
model.measureLike [depth dim geo height width] model.nameLike
[model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset]
model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname]
model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country settlement]] idno rs]

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription.

Module tei

Used by bibl w model.phrase

Members model.pPart.editorial [choice] model.pPart.transcriptional [app surplus]

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring.

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.edit model.limitedPhrase

Members choice

model.pPart.msdesc groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description.

Module tei

Used by model.phrase model.limitedPhrase

Members catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate
origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials.

Module tei

Used by model.pPart.edit

Members app surplus

model.persEventLike groups elements describing specific events in a person's history, for example birth, marriage, or appointment.

Module tei

Used by model.personPart

Members birth death event

Note These are not characteristics of an individual, but often cause an individual to gain such characteristics, or to enter a new state.

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name.

Module namesdates

Used by model.nameLike

Members addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname

model.persStateLike groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.

Module tei

Used by model.personPart

Members affiliation education floruit occupation persName residence

Note These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

model.persTraitLike groups elements describing generally unchanging physical or socially-constructed characteristics of a person, for example hair-colour, ethnicity, or sex.

Module tei

Used by model.personPart

Members age faith langKnowledge nationality sex socecStatus trait

Note These characteristics of an individual are typically independent of their volition or action.

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPerson org

Members org person personGrp

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person.

Module tei

Used by person personGrp

Members model.persEventLike [birth death event] model.persStateLike [affiliation education floruit occupation persName residence] model.persTraitLike [age faith langKnowledge nationality sex socecStatus trait] bibl

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases.

Module tei

Used by byline castItem closer date docImprint etym form gramGrp lem opener origDate rdg re sense time xr macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara

Members model.graphicLike [formula graphic] model.highlighted [model.emphLike [emph foreign term title] model.hiLike [hi]] model.lPart [caesura rhyme] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [address affiliation] model.dateLike [date time] model.measureLike [depth dim geo height width] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [country settlement]] idno rs] model.pPart.edit [model.pPart.editorial [choice] model.pPart.transcriptional [app surplus]] model.pPart.msdesc [catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark] model.ptrLike [ref] model.segLike [c pc w]

Note This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class *inter* or *chunk*. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

model.physDescPart groups specialised elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.

Module tei

Used by physDesc

Members accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

model.placeEventLike groups elements which describe events at or affecting a place.

Module tei

Used by place

Members event

model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPlace org place

Members place

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name.

Module tei

Used by location altIdentifier msIdentifier model.placeStateLike

Members country settlement

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

Module tei

Used by place model.nameLike

Members model.placeNamePart [country settlement]

model.placeTraitLike groups elements which describe unchanging traits of a place.

Module tei

Used by place

Members climate location population terrain trait

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by profileDesc

Members handNotes

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference.

Module tei

Used by bibl cit model.phrase model.limitedPhrase

Members ref

model.publicationStmtPart groups elements which may appear within the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI Header.

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members address authority availability date idno pubPlace publisher

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements.

Module tei

Used by cit sp model.inter

Members model.quoteLike [cit quote] q

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module tei

Used by model.qLike model.msItemPart

Members cit quote

model.rdgLike groups elements which contain a single reading, other than the lemma, within a textual variation.

Module textcrit

Used by app rdgGrp

Members rdg

Note This class allows for variants of the <rdg> element to be easily created via TEI customizations.

model.rdgPart groups elements which mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary manuscript or other witness.

Module textcrit

Used by lem rdg

Members lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

Note These elements may appear anywhere within the elements <lem> and <rdg>, and also within any of their constituent elements.

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module tei

Used by titleStmt model.biblPart model.msItemPart

Members author editor

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members c pc w

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts.

Module tei

Used by sp model.inter

Members camera caption move sound stage tech view

Note Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI Header.

Module tei

Used by teiHeader

Members encodingDesc profileDesc

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>.

Module tei

Used by msItem titlePage

Members byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph figure graphic imprimatur titlePart

3.3 Attribute classes

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual.

Module tei

Members change move q sp

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Module tei

Members cb gb lb milestone pb

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

maybe no assertion is made as to whether or not the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token.

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module tei

Members att.naming [att.personal [addName forename genName orgName persName roleName surname] affiliation author birth climate collection country death editor education event geogFeat institution nationality occupation origPlace population pubPlace relation repository residence rs socecStatus terrain trait] docAuthor docTitle material objectType term title

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status Optional

Datatype `string`

Values any string of Unicode characters

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

Module tei

Members acquisition affiliation age binding birth change climate country custEvent date death education event faith floruit geogFeat langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace origin persName population provenance relation residence seal sex socecStatus stamp terrain time trait

Attributes att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)

att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)

Note This “superclass” provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the `att.dateable.w3c` class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the `att.dateable.iso` class. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

att.dateable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events using the ISO 8601 standard.

Module namesdates

Members att.dateable [acquisition affiliation age binding birth change climate country custEvent date death education event faith floruit geogFeat langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace origin persName population provenance relation residence seal sex socecStatus stamp terrain time trait]

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@when-iso supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Values Any string representing a valid date, time, or one of a variety of combinations.

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.

```
<date
  when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<date
  when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time
  when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<time
  when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>
<date
  when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18
May</date>
<time
  when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>
<time
  when-iso="14">around two</time>
<time
  when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>
```

All of the examples of the when attribute in the `att.dateable.w3c` class are also valid with respect to this attribute.

```

He likes to be punctual. I said <q>
  <time
    when-iso="12">around noon</time>
</q>, and he showed up at <time
  when-iso="12:00:00">12 0'clock</time> on the dot.

```

The second occurrence of <time> could have been encoded with the when attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes* specification. The first occurrence could not.

Note The value of the when-iso attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.

@notBefore-iso specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```

xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }

```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

@notAfter-iso specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```

xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }

```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

@from-iso indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype

```

xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }

```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

@to-iso indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

If both when-iso and dur-iso are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a “regularized” form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

att.dataable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Members att.dataable [acquisition affiliation age binding birth change climate country custEvent date death education event faith floruit geogFeat langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace origin persName population provenance relation residence seal sex socecStatus stamp terrain time trait]

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.
Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>
  <date
    when="1945-1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
  <date
    when="1996-1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the
morning</date>
  <time
    when="1999-1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
  <time
    when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
  <date
    when="1962-1962-10">October of 1962</date>
  <date
    when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
  <date
    when="----01">the first of the month</date>
  <date
    when="---08">August</date>
  <date
    when="2006">MMVI</date>
  <date
    when="0056">AD 56</date>
  <date
    when="--0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the `<date calendar="Julian" when="1632-1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>`.

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
    <date
      when="1828-1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>To
    Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time
      when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>
```

Note The value of the when attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the when attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

`@notBefore` specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. `yyyy-mm-dd`.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.
yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g.
yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose `decls` attribute.

Module `tei`

Members `availability bibl biblFull biblStruct editorialDecl listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace normalization sourceDesc`

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Legal values are: **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default]

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter CCAS. Only one element of a particular type may have a default attribute with a value of `true`.

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module `tei`

Members `att.editLike [att.transcriptional [addSpan delSpan] affiliation age birth climate date death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait] depth dim dimensions height width`

Attributes `att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)`

@unit names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **cm** (centimetres)

mm (millimetres)

in (inches)

lines lines of text

chars (characters) characters of text

@quantity specifies the length in the units specified

Status Optional

Datatype

`xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal`

@extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`
separated by whitespace

Values any measurement phrase, e.g. *25 letters, 2 × 3 inches.*

```
<gap
  extent="5 words"/>
```

```
<height
  extent="half the page"/>
```

@precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

Status Optional

Datatype `"high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.

most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions.

Module tei

Members div lg

Attributes att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module tei

Members change revisionDesc

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **approved**

candidate

cleared

deprecated

draft [Default]

embargoed

expired

frozen

galley
proposed
published
recommendation
submitted
unfinished
withdrawn

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">  
  <change when="2010-2010-10-21" status="published"/>  
  <change when="2010-2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>  
  <change when="2010-2010-08-02" status="embargoed"/>  
  <change when="2010-2010-05-01" status="frozen" who="#MSM"/>  
  <change when="2010-2010-03-01" status="draft" who="#LB"/>  
</revisionDesc>
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of a encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional [addSpan delSpan] affiliation age birth climate date death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait

Attributes att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

external there is external evidence to support the intervention.

conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@source contains a list of one or more pointers indicating sources supporting the given intervention or interpretation.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the xml:id attribute on a <witness> or <msDesc> element elsewhere in the document.

The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

att.enjamb (enjambement) groups elements bearing the enjamb attribute.

Module verse

Members 1

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@enjamb (enjambement) indicates that the end of a verse line is marked by enjambement.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **no** the line is end-stopped

yes the line in question runs on into the next

weak the line is weakly enjambed

strong the line is strongly enjambed

Note The usual practice will be to give the value “yes” to this attribute when enjambement is being marked, or the values “weak” and “strong” if degrees of enjambement are of interest; if no value is given, however, the attribute does not default to a value of “no”; this allows the attribute to be omitted entirely when enjambement is not of particular interest.

att.entryLike groups the different styles of dictionary entries.

Module dictionaries

Members entry superEntry

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@type indicates type of entry, in dictionaries with multiple types.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **main** a main entry (default). [Default]

hom (homograph) groups information relating to one homograph within an entry.

xref (cross reference) a reduced entry whose only function is to point to another main entry (e.g. for forms of an irregular verb or for variant spellings: *was* pointing to *be*, or *esthete* to *aesthete*).

affix an entry for a prefix, infix, or suffix.

abbr (abbreviation) an entry for an abbreviation.

supplemental a supplemental entry (for use in dictionaries which issue supplements to their main work in which they include updated information about entries).

foreign an entry for a foreign word in a monolingual dictionary.

@sortKey contains a (sortable) character sequence reflecting the entry's alphabetical position in the printed dictionary.

Status Optional

Datatype

`token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`

Values a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other

values, will produce the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent.

Note Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under “fourh”, and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under “maccoy”, while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order “alphabetized” between “a-” and “AA”. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

The global `n` attribute may be used to encode the homograph numbers attached to entries for homographs.

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

Module `tei`

Members `TEI` `accMat` `acquisition` `actor` `addName` `addSpan` `additional` `additions` `addrLine` `address` `adminInfo` `affiliation` `age` `altIdentifier` `anchor` `app` `author` `authority` `availability` `back` `bibl` `biblFull` `biblStruct` `binding` `bindingDesc` `birth` `body` `byline` `c` `caesura` `camera` `caption` `castGroup` `castItem` `castList` `catchwords` `cb` `cell` `change` `char` `charDecl` `charName` `charProp` `cit` `climate` `closer` `collation` `collection` `colophon` `condition` `country` `custEvent` `custodialHist` `date` `dateline` `death` `decoDesc` `decoNote` `def` `delSpan` `depth` `dim` `dimensions` `div` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `edition` `editor` `editorialDecl` `education` `emph` `encodingDesc` `entry` `epigraph` `epilogue` `etym` `event` `explicit` `extent` `f` `fLib` `faith` `figDesc` `fileDesc` `filiation` `finalRubric` `floruit` `foliation` `foreign` `forename` `form` `formula` `front` `fs` `g` `gap` `gb` `gen` `genName` `geo` `geogFeat` `glyph` `glyphName` `graphic` `group` `handDesc` `handNote` `handNotes` `head` `height` `heraldry` `hi` `history` `idno` `imprimatur` `imprint` `incipit` `index` `institution` `item` `l` `label` `lacunaEnd` `lacunaStart` `langKnowledge` `langKnown` `layout` `layoutDesc` `lb` `lem` `lg` `list` `listEvent` `listNym` `listOrg` `listPerson` `listPlace` `listWit` `localName` `location` `locus` `locusGrp` `mapping` `material` `milestone` `monogr` `move` `msContents` `msDesc` `msIdentifier` `msItem` `msItemStruct` `msName` `msPart` `musicNotation` `nameLink` `nationality` `normalization` `note` `notesStmt` `nym` `objectDesc` `objectType` `occupation` `offset` `opener` `org` `orgName` `origDate` `origPlace` `origin` `p` `pb` `pc` `performance` `persName` `person` `personGrp` `physDesc` `place` `population` `pos` `postscript` `profileDesc` `prologue` `provenance` `pubPlace` `publicationStmt` `publisher` `q` `quote` `rdg` `rdgGrp` `re` `recordHist` `ref` `relation` `relationGrp` `repository` `residence` `revisionDesc` `rhyme` `role` `roleDesc` `roleName` `row` `rs` `rubric` `salute` `scriptDesc` `scriptNote` `seal` `sealDesc` `secFol` `seriesStmt` `set` `sex` `signatures` `signed` `socecStatus` `sound` `source` `sourceDesc` `sp` `speaker` `stage` `stamp` `subc` `summary` `superEntry` `support` `supportDesc` `surname` `surplus` `surrogates` `symbol` `table` `tech` `teiHeader` `term` `terrain` `text` `textLang` `time` `title` `titlePage` `titlePart` `titleStmt` `trailer` `trait` `typeDesc` `typeName` `unicodeName` `usg` `value` `variantEncoding` `view` `w` `watermark` `width` `wit` `witDetail` `witEnd` `witStart` `witness`

Attributes `att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`) `att.global.analytic` (`@ana`) `att.global.facs` (`@facs`)

`@xml:id` (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:ID`

Values any valid XML identifier.

Note The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section CORS.

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }`
separated by whitespace

Values the value may contain only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: it may not contain whitespace or word separating characters. It need not be restricted to numbers.

Note The n attribute may be used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a “tag” generated according to BCP 47

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:language`

Values The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-) it should, and if not it may, match the value of an ident attribute of a <language> element supplied in the TEI Header of the current document.

Note If no value is specified for xml:lang, the xml:lang value for the immediately enclosing element is inherited; for this reason, a value should always be specified on the outermost element (<TEI>).

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **default** the processor should treat white space according to the default XML white space handling rules

preserve the processor should preserve unchanged any and all white space in the source

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute.

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text.

Module analysis

Members att.global [TEI accMat acquisition actor addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age altIdentifier anchor app author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblStruct binding bindingDesc birth body byline c caesura camera caption castGroup castItem castList catchwords cb cell change char charDecl charName charProp cit climate closer collation collection colophon condition country custEvent custodialHist date dateline death decoDesc decoNote def delSpan depth dim dimensions div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editor editorialDecl education emph encodingDesc entry epigraph epilogue etym event explicit extent f fLib faith figDesc fileDesc filiation finalRubric floruit foliation foreign forename form formula front fs g gap gb gen genName geo

geogFeat glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes head
 height heraldry hi history idno imprimatur imprint incipit index institution item l
 label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langKnowledge langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg
 list listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit localName location locus
 locusGrp mapping material milestone monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier
 msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality
 normalization note notesStmt nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener
 org orgName origDate origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person
 personGrp physDesc place population pos postscript profileDesc prologue
 provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist ref
 relation relationGrp repository residence revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName
 row rs rubric salute scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmt set sex
 signatures signed socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sp speaker stage stamp subc
 summary superEntry support supportDesc surname surplus surrogates symbol table
 tech teiHeader term terrain text textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt
 trailer trait typeDesc typeNote unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view w
 watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness]

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the ana attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more valid identifiers of one or more interpretive elements (usually <fs> or <interp>), separated by white space.

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

att.global.facs groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a transcription of it.

Module transcr

Members att.global [TEI accMat acquisition actor addName addSpan additional additions
 addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age altIdentifier anchor app author authority
 availability back bibl biblFull biblStruct binding bindingDesc birth body byline c
 caesura camera caption castGroup castItem castList catchwords cb cell change char
 charDecl charName charProp cit climate closer collation collection colophon
 condition country custEvent custodialHist date dateline death decoDesc decoNote
 def delSpan depth dim dimensions div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 docTitle edition editor editorialDecl education emph encodingDesc entry epigraph
 epilogue etym event explicit extent f fLib faith figDesc fileDesc filiation finalRubric
 floruit foliation foreign forename form formula front fs g gap gb gen genName geo
 geogFeat glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes head
 height heraldry hi history idno imprimatur imprint incipit index institution item l
 label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langKnowledge langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg
 list listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit localName location locus
 locusGrp mapping material milestone monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier
 msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality
 normalization note notesStmt nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener

org orgName origDate origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person
 personGrp physDesc place population pos postscript profileDesc prologue
 provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist ref
 relation relationGrp repository residence revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName
 row rs rubric salute scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmt set sex
 signatures signed socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sp speaker stage stamp subc
 summary superEntry support supportDesc surname surplus surrogates symbol table
 tech teiHeader term terrain text textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt
 trailer trait typeDesc typeNote unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view w
 watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness]

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@fac (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

att.global.linking defines a set of attributes for hypertext and other linking, which are enabled for all elements when the additional tag set for linking is selected.

Module linking

Members att.global [TEI accMat acquisition actor addName addSpan additional additions
 addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age altIdentifier anchor app author authority
 availability back bibl biblFull biblStruct binding bindingDesc birth body byline c
 caesura camera caption castGroup castItem castList catchwords cb cell change char
 charDecl charName charProp cit climate closer collation collection colophon
 condition country custEvent custodialHist date dateline death decoDesc decoNote
 def delSpan depth dim dimensions div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 docTitle edition editor editorialDecl education emph encodingDesc entry epigraph
 epilogue etym event explicit extent f fLib faith figDesc fileDesc filiation finalRubric
 floruit foliation foreign forename form formula front fs g gap gb gen genName geo
 geogFeat glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes head
 height heraldry hi history idno imprimatur imprint incipit index institution item l
 label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langKnowledge langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg
 list listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit localName location locus
 locusGrp mapping material milestone monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier
 msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality
 normalization note notesStmt nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener
 org orgName origDate origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person
 personGrp physDesc place population pos postscript profileDesc prologue
 provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist ref
 relation relationGrp repository residence revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName
 row rs rubric salute scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmt set sex
 signatures signed socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sp speaker stage stamp subc
 summary superEntry support supportDesc surname surplus surrogates symbol table
 tech teiHeader term terrain text textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt
 trailer trait typeDesc typeNote unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view w
 watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness]

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

@synch (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

@sameAs points to an element that is the same as the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a URI.

@copyOf points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a URI.

Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a URI.

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a URI.

@exclude points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

@select selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more URIs, separated by whitespace.

Note This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written.

Module tei

Members handNote scriptNote typeNote

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@scribe gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

@scribeRef points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

@script characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary, copperplate, Chancery, Italian, etc.*

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

@scriptRef points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <scriptNote> element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

@medium describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil*

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

@scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript

major this hand is used through most of the manuscript

minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript

Note Usually either script or scriptRef, and similarly, either scribe or scribeRef, will be supplied.

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module tei

Members graphic

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype

`token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`

Values The value should be a valid MIME media type

This attribute class provides attributes for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, according to standard taxonomies. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions Media Type system. This system of typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

att.lexicographic defines a set of global attributes available on elements in the base tag set for dictionaries.

Module dictionaries

Members def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@expand gives an expanded form of information presented more concisely in the dictionary

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

Values any string of characters

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos>n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

@norm (normalized) gives a normalized form of information given by the source text in a non-normalized form

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

Values any string of characters

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos
    norm="noun">n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

@split gives the list of split values for a merged form

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

Values any string of characters

@value gives a value which lacks any realization in the printed source text.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

Values any string of characters

@orig (original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

Values any string of characters

@location provides a reference to an `<anchor>` element elsewhere in the document indicating the original location of this component.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values a valid identifier for an <anchor> element elsewhere in the current document.

@mergedIn gives a reference to another element, where the original appears as a merged form.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values any valid identifier.

@opt (optional) indicates whether the element is optional or not

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

att.metrical defines a set of attributes which certain elements may use to represent metrical information.

Module verse

Members att.divLike [div lg] att.segLike [c pc w] l

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@met (metrical structure, conventional) contains a user-specified encoding for the conventional metrical structure of the element.

Status Recommended

Datatype `token`

Values May contain either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. *+--+--+--+*). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a <metDecl> element within the <encodingDesc> of the associated header.

Note Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical pattern for the element concerned is understood to be inherited from its parent.

@real (metrical structure, realized) contains a user-specified encoding for the actual realization of the conventional metrical structure applicable to the element.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype `token`

Values May contain either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. *+--+--+--+*). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a <metDecl> element within the <encodingDesc> of the associated header.

Note Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical realization for the element concerned is understood to be identical to that specified or implied for the met attribute.

@rhyme (rhyme scheme) specifies the rhyme scheme applicable to a group of verse lines.

Status Recommended

Datatype `token`

Values By default, the rhyme scheme is expressed as a string of alphabetic characters each corresponding with a rhyming line. Any non-rhyming lines should be represented by a hyphen or an X. Alternative notations may be defined as for met by use of the <metDecl> element in the TEI header.

Note When the default notation is used, it does not make sense to specify this attribute on any unit smaller than a line. Nor does the default notation provide any way to record internal rhyme, or to specify non-conventional rhyming practice. These extensions would require user-defined alternative notations.

att.msExcerpt (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof.

Module msdescription

Members explicit incipit msContents msItem msItemStruct quote

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@defective indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"`

In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc.

Module tei

Members att.personal [addName forename genName orgName persName roleName surname] affiliation author birth climate collection country death editor education event geogFeat institution nationality occupation origPlace population pubPlace relation repository residence rs socecStatus terrain trait

Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values One or more valid identifiers, separated by whitespace.

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

att.personal (attributes for components of personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a personal name.

Module tei

Members addName forename genName orgName persName roleName surname

Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **yes** the name component is spelled out in full.
[Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

@sort specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the personal name.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values A positive number indicating the sort order.

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

Module tei

Members addSpan note witDetail

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@place *Status* Recommended

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **below** below the line

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

top at the top of the page

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add
  place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
```

```
<add
  place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
  foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note
  place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

att.pointing defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references.

Module tei

Members locus note ref term witDetail

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@evaluate specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

Module tei

Members att.dimensions [att.editLike [att.transcriptional [addSpan delSpan] affiliation age birth climate date death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait] depth dim dimensions height width]

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@min where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

@max where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

att.rdgPart attributes for elements which mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary manuscript or other witness.

Module textcrit

Members lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@wit (witness or witnesses) contains a list of one or more sigla indicating the witnesses which begin or end at this point.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the `xml:id` attribute on a `<witness>` element elsewhere in the document.

These elements may appear anywhere within the elements `<lem>` and `<rdg>`, and also within any of their constituent elements.

att.responsibility provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it.

Module tei

Members att.editLike [att.transcriptional [addSpan delSpan] affiliation age birth climate date death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait] att.textCritical [lem rdg rdgGrp] note witDetail

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype `"high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A pointer to an element in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module tei

Members c pc w

Attributes att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)

@function characterizes the function of the segment.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values For a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate.

@part specifies whether or not the segment is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a clause which is divided between two or more sentences.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the segment is incomplete in some respect

N (no) either the segment is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]

I (initial) the initial part of an incomplete segment

M (medial) a medial part of an incomplete segment

F (final) the final part of an incomplete segment

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the division is to be reconstituted.

att.sourced provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members cb lb milestone pb

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@ed (edition) supplies an arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

Example

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it.

Module tei

Members addSpan cb delSpan gb index lb milestone pb

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values points to an element following this one in the current document.

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element (if any) to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element.

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.

Module tei

Members cell row

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@role indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values. [Default]

Note When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the role attribute of the parent `<row>` element.

@rows indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell (or row) spans several rows.

Note Where several cells span several rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns.

Note Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

att.textCritical defines a set of attributes common to all elements representing variant readings in text critical work.

Module textcrit

Members lem rdg rdgGrp

Attributes att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

@wit (witness or witnesses) contains a list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the xml:id attribute on a <witness> element elsewhere in the document.

Note If the apparatus contains readings only for a single witness, this attribute may be consistently omitted. This attribute may occur both within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness and within an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses.

Additional descriptions or alternative versions of the sigla referenced may be supplied as the content of a child <wit> element.

@type classifies the reading according to some useful typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **substantive** the reading offers a substantive variant.

orthographic the reading differs only orthographically, not in substance, from other readings.

@cause classifies the cause for the variant reading, according to any appropriate typology of possible origins.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **homeoteleuton**

homeoarchy

paleographicConfusion

haplography

dittography

falseEmendation

@varSeq (variant sequence) provides a number indicating the position of this reading in a sequence, when there is reason to presume a sequence to the variants on any one lemma.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values a positive integer

Note Different variant sequences could be coded with distinct number trails: 1-2-3 for one sequence, 5-6-7 for another. More complex variant sequences, with (for example) multiple branchings from single readings, may be expressed through the <join> element.

@hand signifies the hand responsible for a particular reading in the witness.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section PHDH).

Note This attribute is only available within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness. It may not occur in an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses.

This element class defines attributes inherited by <rdg>, <lem>, and <rdgGrp>.

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.

Module tei

Members addSpan delSpan

Attributes att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@hand signifies the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values must refer to a <handNote> element, typically declared in the document header (see section PHDH).

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Sample values include: **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty. [Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

Module tei

Members accMat addName addSpan altIdentifier anchor bibl biblStruct c camera cb charProp cit climate collection country custEvent date decoNote delSpan dim div event explicit filiation finalRubric forename g gb genName geogFeat head incipit lb lg listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location mapping milestone msName nameLink note nym offset org orgName origDate pb pc persName place population quote re ref relationGrp rhyme roleName rubric seal stamp surname term terrain text time trait w

Attributes In addition to global attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

@subtype provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Note The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element, additional to that provided by its type attribute.

The typology used may be formally defined using the <classification> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header, or as a list within one of the components of the <encodingDesc> element, or informally as descriptive prose within the <encodingDesc> element.

3.4 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

@version specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype `token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

Values A TEI version number

Used by —

May contain

header: *teiHeader*

textstructure: *text*

Declaration

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )
}
```

Schematron `<s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>`

Schematron

```
<s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>
```

Example

```
<TEI version="1.2.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

Note This element is required.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@type allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **suspension** the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

contraction the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

superscription the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

acronym the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

title the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, ...)

organization the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

geographic the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

Note The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

Used by model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element abbr
{
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,

```

att.global.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}

Example

```
<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="FR">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Note The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element accMat
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```

<accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope
with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat>

```

<acquisition> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part entered the holding institution.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable
 (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))

Used by history

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
 title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: figure formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element acquisition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,

```


att.databl.attributes,
macro.specialPara}

Example

```
<acquisition>Left to the <name type="place">Bodleian</name> by  
<name type="person">Richard Rawlinson</name> in 1755.  
</acquisition>
```

<actor> Name of an actor appearing within a cast list.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.castItemPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element actor { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<castItem>  
  <role>Mathias</role>  
  <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>  
  <actor>Mr. Henry Irving</actor>  
</castItem>
```

Note This element should be used only to mark the name of the actor as given in the source. Chapter ND discusses ways of marking the components of names, and also of associating names with biographical information about a person.

<addName> (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.personal (@full,
@sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed
(@type, @subtype)

Used by model.persNamePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element addName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <addName type="epithet">the Great</addName>
  <roLeName>Emperor of Prussia</roLeName>
</persName>
```

<addSpan/> (added span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text added by an author, scribe, annotator or corrector (see also <add>).

Module transcr

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.transcriptional
(@hand, @status, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit,
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,

(*@max*)) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*)

Used by model.global.edit

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element addSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron

```
<sch:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <sch:name/> is required.</sch:assert>
```

Schematron

```
<sch:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</sch:assert>
```

Example

```
<handNote xml:id="HE0L" scribe="HelgiÓlafsson"/>
<body>
  <div/>
  <addSpan n="added gathering" hand="#HE0L" spanTo="#P025"/>
  <div/>
  <div/>
  <div/>
  <div/>
  <div/>
  <anchor xml:id="P025"/>
  <div/>
</body>
```

Note Both the beginning and the end of the added material must be marked; the beginning by the <addSpan> element itself, the end by the spanTo attribute.

<additional> groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

Used by msDesc msPart

May contain

msdescription: adminInfo surrogates

Declaration

```
element additional
{
```

```

    att.global.attributes,
    att.global.attributes,
    ( adminInfo?, surrogates? )
}

```

Example

```

<additional>
  <adminInfo>
    <recordHist>
      <p/>
    </recordHist>
    <custodialHist>
      <p/>
    </custodialHist>
  </adminInfo>
  <surrogates>
    <p/>
  </surrogates>
  <listBibl>
    <bibl/>
  </listBibl>
</additional>

```

<additions> contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript, such as marginalia or other annotations.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
 title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: figure formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element additions
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<additions>
  <p>There are several marginalia in this manuscript. Some consist of
    single characters and others are figurative. On 8v is to be found a drawing of
    a mans head wearing a hat. At times sentences occurs: On 5v:
  <q xml:lang="is">Her er skrif andres isslendin</q>,
    on 19r: <q xml:lang="is">þeim go</q>,
    on 21r: <q xml:lang="is">amen med aund ok munn halla rei knar hofud summu all
huad
    batar þad mælgi ok mal</q>,
    On 21v: some runic letters and the sentence <q xml:lang="la">aue maria gracia
plena dominus</q>.</p>
</additions>
```

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.addrPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element addrLine
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the `model.addrPart` class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an `<address>` element directly but may be wrapped within an `<addrLine>` if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

Module core

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
`(att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `model.addressLike` `model.publicationStmtPart`

May contain

core: `addrLine` `cb` `gap` `index` `lb` `milestone` `note` `pb` `rs`
header: `idno`
iso-fs: `fLib` `fs`
linking: `anchor`
namesdates: `addName` `country` `forename` `genName` `geogFeat` `nameLink` `offset`
`orgName` `persName` `roleName` `settlement` `surname`
textcrit: `witDetail`
transcr: `addSpan` `delSpan` `gb`

Declaration

```
element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
```

```
<addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

<adminInfo> (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of the manuscript, and also about the record description itself.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by additional

May contain

core: note
header: availability
msdescription: custodialHist recordHist
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element adminInfo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( recordHist?, availability?, custodialHist?, model.noteLike? )
}
```

Example

```
<adminInfo>
  <recordHist>
    <source>Record created <date>1 Aug 2004</date>
  </source>
</recordHist>
  <availability>
    <p>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this
      collection has been limited at the request of the donor. Please ask
      repository staff for details
      if you are interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1:
      Correspondence.</p>
  </availability>
  <custodialHist>
    <p>Collection donated to the Manuscript Library by the Estate of
      Edgar Holden in 1993. Donor number: 1993-034.</p>
  </custodialHist>
</adminInfo>
```

<affiliation> (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor.

Module namesdates

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.editLike`
(`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`,
`@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`))) (`att.responsibility` (`@cert`,
`@resp`)) `att.dateable` (`att.dateable.w3c` (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`,
`@from`, `@to`)) (`att.dateable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`,
`@to-iso`)) `att.naming` (`@role`, `@nymRef`) (`att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`))

Used by `model.addressLike` `model.persStateLike`

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element affiliation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US <name type="org">National Endowment
for
  the Humanities</name>
</affiliation>
<affiliation notAfter="1960-1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-1957-02-28">Paid up member
of the
<orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName>
</affiliation>
```

Note If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the `<name>` element as above, or the more specific `<orgName>` element.

<age> (age) specifies the age of a person.

Module `namesdates`

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike
(@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision,
@scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert,
@resp)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter,
@from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,
@to-iso))

@value supplies a numeric code representing the age or age group

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Note This attribute may be used to complement a more detailed
discussion of a person's age in the content of the element

Used by model.persTraitLike

May contain

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap index lb milestone note pb ref rs
term time title

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element age
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  attribute value { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<age value="2" notAfter="1986">under 20 in the early eighties</age>
```

Note As with other culturally-constructed traits such as sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalising attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text.

<altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.typed` (`@type`,
`@subtype`)

Used by `msIdentifier` `msPart`

May contain

`core`: note
`header`: `idno`
`msdescription`: collection institution repository
`namesdates`: country settlement

Declaration

```
element altIdentifier
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.placeNamePart_sequenceOptional,
    institution?,
    repository?,
    collection?,
    idno,
    note?
  )
}
```

Example

```
<altIdentifier>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
  <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
  <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</altIdentifier>
```

Note An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not known, this should be stated.

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

Module linking

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.typed` (`@type`,
`@subtype`)

`@xml:id` (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status Required

Datatype `xsd:ID`

Values any valid XML identifier.

Note The `xml:id` attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section CORS.

`@xml:id` (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Status Required

Datatype `xsd:ID`

Values any valid XML identifier.

Note The `xml:id` attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section CORS.

Used by `model.milestoneLike`

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element anchor
{
  attribute xml:id { xsd:ID },
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.analytic.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  attribute xml:id { xsd:ID },
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.analytic.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

Note On this element, the global `xml:id` attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

<app> (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and at least one reading.

Module `textcrit`

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

@type classifies the variation contained in this element according to some convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values Any convenient descriptive word or phrase, describing the extent of the variation (e.g. *word*, *phrase*, *punctuation*, etc.) its text-critical significance (e.g. *significant*, *accidental*, *unclear*), or the nature of the variation or the principles required to understand it (e.g. *lectio difficilior*, *usus auctoris*, etc.)

@from identifies the beginning of the lemma in the base text, if necessary.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values any valid identifier

Note This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used.

@to identifies the endpoint of the lemma in the base text, if necessary.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values any valid identifier

Note This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used, with the encoded apparatus held in a separate file rather than being embedded *in-line* in the base-text file.

@loc (location) indicates the location of the variation, when the location-referenced method of apparatus markup is used.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype 1- occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`
separated by whitespace

Values A string containing a canonical reference for the passage to which the variation applies.

Note This attribute is used only when the location-referenced encoding method is used.

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional

May contain

core: cb gap index lb milestone note pb

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: lem rdg rdgGrp wit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element app
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute from { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute to { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute loc
  {
    list
    {
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" },
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }*
    }
  }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( lem, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )?,
    (
      ( model.rdgLike, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )

```

```
    | ( rdgGrp, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )
  )*
}
```

Schematron

```
<sch:assert
  test="count( descendant::tei:lem[ generate-id( current() ) = generate-id(
  ancestor::tei:app[1] ) ] ) < 2">Only one <lem> element may appear within a single
  apparatus entry, whether it appears outside a <rdgGrp>
  element or within it.</sch:assert>
```

Example

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>
</app>
```

Example

```
<app type="substantive">
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem wit="#Cp #Ld1">Experiment</lem>
    <rdg wit="#La">Ex<g ref="#per"/>iment</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem>Eriment<wit>[unattested]</wit>
    </lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>
```

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role,
@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by monogr msItemStruct model.respLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
  
```

Example

```

<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
  
```

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap index lb milestone note pb ref rs
term time title
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element authority
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

<authority>John Smith</authority>

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable
(@default)

@status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **free** the text is freely available.

unknown the status of the text is unknown. [Default]

restricted the text is not freely available.

Used by adminInfo model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  model.plike+
}

```

Example

```

<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>

```

Note A consistent format should be adopted

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by text

May contain

core: cb gap head index lb milestone note pb
 drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 textcrit: witDetail
 textstructure: byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}

```

Example

```

<back>
  <div1 type="appendix">

```



```
<head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
<p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please
</p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are
sold at Mr
  Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all
Nations,
    10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>
    <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at
the
    Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &c.
2s. 6d</item>
    <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
</back>
```

Note The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by msItemStruct model.biblLike model.msItemPart model.personPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address author cb choice date editor emph foreign gap hi index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher ref rs term time title

gaiji: g

header: edition extent idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: depth dim height msIdentifier width

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

Declaration

```
element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.highlighted
    | model.pPart.data | model.pPart.edit   | model.segLike      | model.ptrLike      | mo
  )
}
```

Example

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>
```

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

Used by model.biblLike

May contain

header: extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element biblFull
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    ( titleStmt, extent?, publicationStmt, seriesStmt?, notesStmt? ),
    sourceDesc*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<biblFull>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the
      middle ages
        to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>
```

<biblStruct> (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable
(@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.biblLike

May contain

core: monogr note
header: idno
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element biblStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( monogr+, ( model.noteLike | idno ) * )
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers from the
      middle ages
```

```

    to the present</title>
  <edition>first edition</edition>
  <imprint>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </imprint>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>

```

<binding> contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc. applied to a manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))

@contemporary specifies whether or not the binding is contemporary with the majority of its contents

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"`

Note The value true indicates that the binding is contemporaneous with its contents; the value false that it is not. The value unknown should be used when the date of either binding or manuscript is unknown

Used by bindingDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: condition decoNote

Declaration

```

element binding
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  attribute contemporary { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" }?,
  ( model.pLike | condition | decoNote )+
}

```

Example

```

<binding contemporary="true">
  <p>Contemporary blind stamped leather over wooden boards with evidence of a fore edge clasp closing to the back cover.</p>
</binding>

```

Example

```

<bindingDesc>
  <binding contemporary="false">
    <p>Quarter bound by the Phillipps' binder, Bretherton, with his sticker on the front pastedown.</p>
  </binding>

```

```
</binding>
<binding contemporary="false">
  <p>Rebound by an unknown 19th c. company; edges cropped and gilt.</p>
</binding>
</bindingDesc>
```

<bindingDesc> (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <binding> elements, one for each binding of the manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

core: p
msdescription: binding condition decoNote

Declaration

```
element bindingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.pLike | decoNote | condition )+ | binding+ )
}
```

Example

```
<bindingDesc>
  <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over
  19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather with
  gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each
  cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in
  gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the
  spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured
  endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.</p>
</bindingDesc>
```

<birth> (birth) contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by model.persEventLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element birth
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>
```

Example

```
<birth when="1960-1960-12-10">In a small cottage near  
<name type="place">Aix-Aix-la-Chapelle</name>,  
early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date>  
</birth>
```

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by text

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb
q quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace
textcrit: listWit witDetail
textstructure: byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
 postscript salute signed trailer
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    (
      ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global
        | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          (
            ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
            | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global
              | model.divGenLike )* )+
          )?
        )
      ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<body>
  <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
  <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
  <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
  <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
  <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
  <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
  <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
  <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
  <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
  <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by opener model.divWrapper model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
textstructure: docAuthor
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the  
while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

Example

```
<byline>BY  
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>  
Master of Arts,  
(Somtimes)  
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

<C> (character) represents a character.

Module analysis

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.segLike
(@function, @part) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by pc w model.segLike

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<phr>
  <c>M</c>
  <c>0</c>
  <c>A</c>
  <c>I</c>
  <w>doth</w>
  <w>sway</w>
  <w>my</w>
  <w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The type attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

<caesura/> marks the point at which a metrical line may be divided.

Module verse

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.lPart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element caesura { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, empty }
```

Example

```
<l>Hwæt we Gar-Dena <caesura/> in gear-dagum</l>
<l>peod-peod-cyninga <caesura/> þrym gefrunon,</l>
<l>hy ða æpelingas <caesura/> ellen fremedon.</l>
```

<camera> describes a particular camera angle or viewpoint in a screen play.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype)

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Used by model.stageLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element camera
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<view>George glances at the window--and freezes.
<camera type="cut">New angle--shock cut</camera>
Out the window the body of a dead man suddenly slams into frame
</view>
```

<caption> contains the text of a caption or other text displayed as part of a film script or screenplay.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.stageLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element caption
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<camera>Zoom in to overlay showing some stock film of hansom cabs
galloping past</camera>
<caption>London, 1895.</caption>
<caption>The residence of Mr Oscar Wilde.</caption>
<sound>Suitably classy music starts.</sound>
<view>Mix through to Wilde's drawing room. A crowd of suitably
dressed folk are engaged in typically brilliant conversation,
laughing affectedly and drinking champagne.</view>
<sp>
  <speaker>Prince of Wales</speaker>
  <p>My congratulations, Wilde. Your latest play is a great success.
</p>
</sp>
```

Note A specialized form of stage direction.

<castGroup> (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual castItem elements within a cast list.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by castGroup castList

May contain

core: cb gap head index lb milestone note pb
drama: castGroup castItem roleDesc
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
textcrit: witDetail
textstructure: trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element castGroup
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.headLike )*,
    ( ( castItem | castGroup | roleDesc ), model.global* )+,
    ( trailer, model.global* )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<castGroup rend="braced">
  <castItem>
    <role>Walter</role>
    <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Hans</role>
    <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
  </castItem>
  <roleDesc>friends of Mathias</roleDesc>
</castGroup>

```

Note The rend attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc. Note that in this example the role description “friends of Mathias” is understood to apply to both roles equally.

<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@type characterizes the cast item.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **role** the item describes a single role. [Default]

list the item describes a list of non-speaking roles.

Used by castGroup castList

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

drama: actor role roleDesc

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element castItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "role" | "list" }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.castItemPart | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

Example

```
<castItem>
  <role>Player</role>
  <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>
```

Example

```
<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>
```

<castList> (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.inter model.frontPart.drama

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb
q quote sp stage
dictionaries: entry superEntry
drama: camera caption castGroup castItem castList move sound tech view
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace
textcrit: listWit witDetail
textstructure: byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener salute
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element castList
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )*,
    ( ( castItem | castGroup ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<castList>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Aafaa</role>
      <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Blindman</role>
      <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Goyi</role>
      <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Cripple</role>
      <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
  <castItem>
    <role>Si Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc>
    <actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Iya Agba</role>
      <actor>Nguba Agolia</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Iya Mate</role>
      <actor>Bopo George</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
  <castItem>
    <role>Dr Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
    <actor>Nat Okoro</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Priest</role>
    <actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>The old man</role>
    <roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>

```

```
<actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor>
</castItem>
</castList>
<stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of
Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>
```

<catchwords> describes the system used to ensure correct ordering of the quires making up a codex or incunabulum, typically by means of annotations at the foot of the page.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element catchwords
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<catchwords>Vertical catchwords in the hand of the scribe placed along
the inner bounding line, reading from top to bottom.</catchwords>
```

<cb/> (column break) marks the boundary between one column of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

Module core

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) *att.typed* (*@type*,
@subtype) *att.sourced* (*@ed*) *att.spanning* (*@spanTo*) *att.breaking* (*@break*)

Used by *model.milestoneLike*

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sourced.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
<sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
  sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
  or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
  containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
  <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
  Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
```

Note On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this `<cb>` element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. By convention, the `<cb>` element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

<cell> contains one cell of a table.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) *att.tableDecoration*
(*@role*, *@rows*, *@cols*)

Used by row

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
    and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

<change> summarizes a particular change or correction made to a particular version of an electronic text which is shared between several researchers.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.ascribed (@who)
att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.docStatus (@status)

Used by recordHist revisionDesc

May contain

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap index label lb
list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: table

header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element change
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter | model.global )*
}
```

Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
  <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter
23</change>
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter
2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section
3</change>
  <change when="1991-1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Note The who attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The status attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

<char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by charDecl

May contain

core: graphic note
figures: figure formula
gaiji: charName charProp mapping
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element char
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    charName?,
    model.glossLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<char xml:id="circledU4EBA">
  <charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
  <charProp>
    <unicodeName>character-character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
    <value>circle</value>
  </charProp>
  <charProp>
    <localName>daikanwa</localName>
    <value>36</value>
  </charProp>
  <mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
</char>
```

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.encodingDescPart

May contain

gaiji: char glyph

Declaration

```
element charDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( char | glyph )+ )
}
```

Example

```

<charDecl>
  <char xml:id="aENL">
    <charName>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</charName>
    <mapping type="standardized">a</mapping>
  </char>
</charDecl>

```

<charName> (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by char

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```

element charName { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, text }

```

Example

```

<charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>

```

Note The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <charName>s to facilitate data exchange.

<charProp> (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
 @subtype)

Used by char glyph

May contain

gaiji: localName unicodeName value

Declaration

```

element charProp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( ( unicodeName | localName ), value )
}

```

Example

```

<charProp>
  <unicodeName>character-character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
  <value>circle</value>
</charProp>

```

```
<charProp>
  <localName>daikanwa</localName>
  <value>36</value>
</charProp>
```

Note If the property is a Unicode Normative Property, then its <unicodeName> must be supplied. Otherwise, its name must be specified by means of a <localName>. At a later release, additional constraints will be defined on possible value/name combinations using Schematron rules

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

Module core

Used by choice model.pPart.editorial

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

Declaration

```
element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )* }
```

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>
```

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest. Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section TCAPLL should be preferred.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype)

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Used by model.quoteLike model.entryPart.top

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap index lb milestone note pb q quote ref
dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc superEntry usg xr
header: biblFull
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: msDesc
textcrit: witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.qLike | model.egLike | model.biblLike
    | model.ptrLike | model.global | model.entryPart )+
}
```

Example

```
<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
  as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
    <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
    <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
      <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
    </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

<climate> (climate) contains information about the physical climate of a place.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable
(att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,

@precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical
(@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by climate model.placeTraitLike

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p
header: biblFull
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: climate
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element climate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    climate*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<place xml:id="ROMA">
  <placeName>Rome</placeName>
  <climate>
    <ab>
      <table>
        <head>24-24-hr Average Temperature</head>
        <row>
          <cell/>
          <cell role="label">Jan</cell>
          <cell role="label">Jun</cell>
          <cell role="label">Dec</cell>
        </row>
        <row>
          <cell role="label">°C</cell>
          <cell role="data">7.1</cell>
          <cell role="data">21.7</cell>
          <cell role="data">8.3</cell>
        </row>
        <row>
          <cell role="label">°F</cell>
          <cell role="data">44.8</cell>
          <cell role="data">71.1</cell>
          <cell role="data">46.9</cell>
        </row>
      </table>
    </ab>
    <note>Taken from <bibl>
      <abbr>GHCN 2 Beta</abbr>: The Global Historical Climatology Network,
      version 2 beta, 1904 months between 1811 and 1980. <ptr
```

```
target="http://www.worldclimate.com/cgi-http://www.worldclimate.com/cgi-bin/da
ta.pl?ref=N41E012+1202+0004058G2"/>
</bibl>
</note>
</climate>
</place>
```

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.divBottomPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: dateline salute signed

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline
    | salute          | model.phrase | model.global  )*
```

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
```



```
</closer>  
</div>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">  
  <p> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>  
  <closer>  
    <dateline>  
      <name type="place">Trieste-Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>  
      <date>1914-1914-1921</date>  
    </dateline>  
  </closer>  
</div>
```

<collation> contains a description of how the leaves or bifolia are physically arranged.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element collation  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

<collation>The written leaves preceded by an original flyleaf, conjoint with the pastedown.**</collation>**

Example

```
<collation>
  <p>
    <formula>1-1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text)
      7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</formula>
    <catchwords>Catchwords are written horizontally in center
      or towards the right lower margin in various manners:
      in red ink for quires 1-6 (which are also signed in red
      ink with letters of the alphabet and arabic numerals);
      quires 7-9 in ink of text within yellow decorated frames;
      quire 10 in red decorated frame; quire 12 in ink of text;
      quire 13 with red decorative slashes; quire 14 added in
      cursive hand.</catchwords>
  </p>
</collation>
```

<collection> contains the name of a collection of manuscripts, not necessarily located within a single repository.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element collection
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
  <country>USA</country>
  <region>California</region>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
  <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
  <collection>Ellesmere</collection>
  <idno>El 26 C 9</idno>
  <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName>
</msIdentifier>
```

<colophon> contains the *colophon* of a manuscript item: that is, a statement providing information regarding the date, place, agency, or reason for production of the manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `msItemStruct` `model.msQuoteLike`

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element colophon
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<colophon>Ricardus Franciscus Scripsit Anno Domini
1447.</colophon>
```

Example

```
<colophon>Explicit explicat/scriptor ludere eat.</colophon>
```

Example

```
<colophon>Explicit venenum viciorum domini illius, qui comparavit Anno
domini Millesimo Trecentesimo nonagesimo primo, Sabbato in festo
sancte Marthe virginis gloriose. Laus tibi criste quia finitur
libellus iste.</colophon>
```

<condition> contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript.

Module `msdescription`

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `binding` `bindingDesc` `sealDesc` `supportDesc`

May contain

analysis: c pc w

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element condition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

<condition>

```
<p>There are lacunae in three places in this
manuscript. After 14v two
leaves has been cut out and narrow strips leaves remains in the spine. After
68v one gathering is missing and after 101v at least one gathering of 8 leaves
has been lost. </p>
<p>Several leaves are damaged with tears or holes or have a
irregular shape. Some of the damages do not allow the lines to be of full
length and they are apparently older than the script. There are tears on fol.
2r-v, 9r-v, 10r-v, 15r-18v, 19r-v, 20r-22v, 23r-v, 24r-28v, 30r-v, 32r-35v,
37r-v, 38r-v, 40r-43v, 45r-47v, 49r-v, 51r-v, 53r-60v, 67r-v, 68r-v, 70r-v,
74r-80v, 82r-v, 86r-v, 88r-v, 89r-v, 95r-v, 97r-98v 99r-v, 100r-v. On fol. 98
the corner has been torn off. Several leaves are in a bad condition due to
moist and wear, and have become dark, bleached or
wrinkled. </p>
<p>The script has been
touched up in the 17th century with black ink. The touching up on the following
fols. was done by
<name>Bishop Brynjólf Sveinsson</name>: 1v, 3r, 4r, 5r,
6v, 8v,9r, 10r, 14r, 14v, 22r,30v, 36r-52v, 72v, 77r,78r,103r, 104r,. An
AM-note says according to the lawman
<name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> that the rest of the
touching up was done by himself and another lawman
<name>Sigurður Jónsson</name>.
<name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> did the touching up
on the following fols.: 46v, 47r, 48r, 49r-v, 50r, 52r-v.
<name>Sigurður Jónsson</name> did the rest of the
touching up in the section 36r-59r containing
<title>Bretasögur</title>
```

```
</p>
</condition>
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

Module core

Used by model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element corr { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know,
Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <corr>can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now –
how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

<country> (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc.

Module namesdates

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role,
@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable
(att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))

Used by model.placeNamePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element country
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<country key="DK">Denmark</country>
```

Note The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.

<custEvent> (custodial event) describes a single event during the custodial history of a manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable
(att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by custodialHist

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element custEvent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<custEvent type="photography">Photographed by David Cooper on <date>12 Dec
1964</date>
</custEvent>
```

<custodialHist> (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript's
custodial history, either as running prose or as a series of dated custodial events.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by adminInfo

May contain

core: p
msdescription: custEvent

Declaration

```
element custodialHist
{
  att.global.attributes,

```

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

```
    att.global.attributes,  
    ( model.pLike+ | custEvent+ )  
}
```

Example

```
<custodialHist>  
  <custEvent type="conservation" notBefore="1961-1961-03" notAfter="1963-1963-  
02">Conserved between March 1961 and February 1963 at  
  Birgitte Dalls Konserveringsværksted.</custEvent>  
  <custEvent type="photography" notBefore="1988-1988-05-01" notAfter="1988-1988-  
05-30">Photographed in  
  May 1988 by AMI/FA.</custEvent>  
  <custEvent type="transfer-transfer-dispatch" notBefore="1989-1989-11-13"  
notAfter="1989-1989-11-13">Dispatched to Iceland  
  13 November 1989.</custEvent>  
</custodialHist>
```

<date> contains a date in any format.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable
(att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
@precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@when (You must enter a date in ISO format) supplies the value of the date or
time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date  
| xsd:gYear  
| xsd:gMonth  
| xsd:gDay  
| xsd:gYearMonth  
| xsd:gMonthDay  
| xsd:time  
| xsd:dateTime  
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<p>  
  <date  
    when="1945-1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>  
  <date  
    when="1996-1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the  
morning</date>  
  <time  
    when="1999-1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>  
  <time  
    when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>  
</p>
```



```

    when="1962-1962-10">October of 1962</date>
  <date
    when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
  <date
    when="---01">the first of the month</date>
  <date
    when="--08">August</date>
  <date
    when="2006">MMVI</date>
  <date
    when="0056">AD 56</date>
  <date
    when="--0056">56 BC</date>
</p>

```

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the `<date calendar="Julian" when="1632-1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>`.

```

<opener>
  <dateline>
    <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
    <date
      when="1828-1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>To
    Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time
      when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>

```

Note The value of the when attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the when attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

`@notBefore` (You must enter a date in ISO format) specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. `yyyy-mm-dd`.

Status Optional

Datatype

<pre> xsd:date xsd:gYear xsd:gMonth xsd:gDay xsd:gYearMonth xsd:gMonthDay xsd:time xsd:dateTime token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" } </pre>

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@notAfter (You must enter a date in ISO format) specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@from (You must enter a date in ISO format) indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@to (You must enter a date in ISO format) indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

Used by model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone

note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula
 gaiji: g
 header: idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element date
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  att.dataable.w3c.attribute.period,
  attribute when
  {
    xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\+\-]+" }
  }?,
  attribute notBefore
  {
    xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\+\-]+" }
  }?,
  attribute notAfter
  {
    xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  }
}

```

```

| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
| token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
}?,
attribute from
{
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
}?,
attribute to
{
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
}?,
att.dataable.iso.attributes,
att.dimensions.attributes,
( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

Example

```
<date when="1980-1980-02">early February 1980</date>
```

Example

```
Given on the <date when="1977-1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the
Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

Example

```
<date when="1990-1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by closer opener model.divWrapper

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

<death> (death) contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike
(@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision,
@scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert,
@resp)) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter,
@from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,
@to-iso)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by model.persEventLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element death
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<death when="1902-1902-10-01"/>
```

Example

```
<death when="1960-1960-12-10">Passed away near
<name type="place">Aix-Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, after suffering from cerebral palsy.
</death>
```

<decoDesc> (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript, either as a sequence of paragraphs, or as a sequence of topically organised <decoNote> elements.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

core: p
msdescription: decoNote summary

Declaration

```
element decoDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

    ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, decoNote+ ) )
}

```

Example

```

<decoDesc>
  <p>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated
    illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with red
    penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials; verses
    with 1-line initials, alternately blue or red.</p>
</decoDesc>

```

<decoNote> (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by binding bindingDesc decoDesc msItemStruct seal sealDesc model.msItemPart

May contain

- analysis: c pc w
- core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title
- drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
- figures: figure formula table
- gaiji: g
- header: biblFull idno
- iso-fs: fLib fs
- linking: anchor
- msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
- namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
- textcrit: app listWit witDetail
- transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
- verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element decoNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```

<decoDesc>
  <decoNote type="initial">
    <p>The start of each book of the Bible with
      a 10-line historiated illuminated initial;
      prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials
      with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by
      3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials,
      alternately blue or red.</p>
    </decoNote>
  </decoDesc>

```

<def> (definition) contains definition text in a dictionary entry.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.lexicographic
 (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt)

Used by etym model.entryPart.top model.entryPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element def
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>competitor</orth>

```



```
<hyph>com|peti|tor</hyph>
<pron>k@m"petit@(r)</pron>
</form>
<gramGrp>
  <pos>n</pos>
</gramGrp>
<def>person who competes.</def>
</entry>
```

<delSpan/> (deleted span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise signaled as superfluous or spurious by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

Module transcr

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.transcriptional` (`@hand`, `@status`, `@seq`) (`att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`))) (`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`) `att.spanning` (`@spanTo`)

Used by `model.global.edit`

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element delSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron

```
<s:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <s:name/>
is required.</s:assert>
```

Schematron

```
<s:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</s:assert>
```

Example

```
<p>Paragraph partially deleted. This is the undeleted
portion <delSpan spanTo="#a23"/>and this the deleted
portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph deleted together with adjacent material.</p>
<p>Second fully deleted paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially deleted; in the middle of this
paragraph the deletion ends and the anchor point marks
the resumption <anchor xml:id="a23"/> of the text. ...</p>
```

Note Both the beginning and ending of the deleted sequence must be marked: the beginning by the `<delSpan>` element, the ending by the target of the `spanTo`

attribute. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <delSpan> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause for the omission from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections PHOM and, for the close association of the <delSpan> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements, PHCOMB. The <delSpan> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

<depth> contains a measurement measured across the spine of a book or codex, or (for other text-bearing objects) perpendicular to the measurement given by the “width” element.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))

Used by model.measureLike model.dimLike

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element depth
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<depth unit="in" quantity="4"/>
```

Note If used to specify the width of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the “width” axis.

<dim> contains any single measurement forming part of a dimensional specification of some sort.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))

Used by dimensions model.measureLike

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element dim
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<dim type="circumference" extent="4.67 in"/>
```

Note The specific elements <width>, <height>, and <depth> should be used in preference to this generic element wherever appropriate.

<dimensions> contains a dimensional specification.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))

@type indicates which aspect of the object is being measured.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **leaves** dimensions relate to one or more leaves (e.g. a single leaf, a gathering, or a separately bound part)

ruled dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been ruled in preparation for writing.

pricked dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been pricked out in preparation for ruling (used where this differs significantly from the ruled area, or where the ruling is not measurable).

written dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been written, with the height measured from the top of the minims on the top line of writing, to the bottom of the minims on the bottom line of writing.

miniatures dimensions relate to the miniatures within the manuscript

binding dimensions relate to the binding in which the codex or manuscript is contained

box dimensions relate to the box or other container in which the manuscript is stored.

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

msdescription: depth dim height width

Declaration

```

element dimensions
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  ( ( dim | model.dimLike )* )
}

```

Schematron

```

<s:report test="count(tei:width)> 1">Width element may appear once only
</s:report>
<s:report test="count(tei:height)> 1">Height element may appear once only
</s:report>
<s:report test="count(tei:depth)> 1">Depth element may appear once only
</s:report>

```

Example

```

<dimensions type="leaves">
  <height scope="range">157-157-160</height>
  <width>105</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
  <height scope="most">90</height>
  <width scope="most">48</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
  <height>12</height>
  <width>10</width>
</dimensions>

```

Example This element may be used to record the dimensions of any text-bearing object, not necessarily a codex. For example:

```

<dimensions type="panels">
  <height scope="all">7004</height>
  <width scope="all">1803</width>
  <dim type="relief" unit="mm">345</dim>
</dimensions>

```

This might be used to show that the inscribed panels on some (imaginary) monument are all the same size (7004 by 1803 cm) and stand out from the rest of the monument by 345 mm.

Example When simple numeric quantities are involved, they may be expressed on the quantity attribute of any or all of the child elements, as in the following example:

```

<dimensions type="leaves">
  <height scope="range">157-157-160</height>
  <width quantity="105"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
  <height unit="cm" scope="most" quantity="90"/>
  <width unit="cm" scope="most" quantity="48"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
  <height quantity="12"/>
  <width quantity="10"/>
</dimensions>

```

Note Contains no more than one of each of the specialised elements used to express a three-dimensional object's height, width, and depth, combined with any number of other kinds of dimensional specification.

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.divLike
 (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.divLike

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb
 q quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: listWit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
 postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to
repress all
      exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div n="1" type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest
happiness of the greatest number....</p>
      <div n="1.1" type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
        <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be
attached to
          authority ... </p>
      </div>
      <div n="1.2" type="section">
        <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
        <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when... </p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</body>

```

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Used by byline model.titlepagePart model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element docAuthor

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
      Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Note The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not.

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@when gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
xsd:date
| xsd:gYear
| xsd:gMonth
| xsd:gDay
| xsd:gYearMonth
| xsd:gMonthDay
| xsd:time
| xsd:dateTime
```

Values a date in one of the formats specified in XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition

Note For simple dates, the when attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in the form (YYYY-MM-DD) specified by XML Schema Part 2.

Used by docImprint model.titlepagePart model.divWrapper model.pLike.front

May contain

- analysis: c pc w
- core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title
- figures: formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- iso-fs: fLib fs
- linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when
  {
    xsd:date
    | xsd:gYear
    | xsd:gMonth
    | xsd:gDay
    | xsd:gYearMonth
    | xsd:gMonthDay
    | xsd:time
    | xsd:dateTime
  }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element docEdition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb pubPlace publisher ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: docDate

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace
    | docDate          | publisher         | model.global  )*
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
  at
  <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in
  <pubPlace>wick-wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
  <name>A. Dodd</name> without
  <pubPlace>Temple-Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
  and <name>J. Graves</name> in
  <pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key,
@ref)

Used by model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

core: cb gap index lb milestone note pb
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
textcrit: witDetail
textstructure: titlePart
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
```

```
( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )  
}
```

Example

```
<docTitle>  
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>  
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>  
</docTitle>
```

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by monogr model.biblPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element edition  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>  
</edition>  
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

<editor> secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role,
@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by monogr model.respLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable
(@default)

Used by model.encodingDescPart

May contain

core: p
header: normalization

Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization>
    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
    </p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all" form="std">
    <p>All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing
      quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

<education> contains a description of the educational experience of a person.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike
(@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision,
@scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert,
@resp)) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter,
@from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,
@to-iso)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by model.persStateLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element education
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<education>Left school at age 16</education>
<education notBefore="1986-1986-01-01" notAfter="1990-1990-06-30">Attended
<name>Cherwell School</name>
</education>
```

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.emphLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element emph
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
att.global.attributes,  
macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
You took the car and did <emph>what</emph>?!!
```

Example

```
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.  
<q>  
  <emph>What  
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>  
</q>
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.teiHeaderPart

May contain

core: p
gaiji: charDecl
header: editorialDecl
textcrit: variantEncoding

Declaration

```
element encodingDesc  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  ( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )  
}
```

Example

```
<encodingDesc>  
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All  
  hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No  
  formatting or layout information preserved.</p>  
</encodingDesc>
```

<entry> contains a reasonably well-structured dictionary entry.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.entryLike (@type,
@sortKey)

Used by superEntry model.entryLike

May contain

core: cb lb milestone pb

dictionaries: form sense usg

linking: anchor

transcr: gb

Declaration

```

element entry
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.entryLike.attributes,
  ( model.milestoneLike*, usg*, form, sense )
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>disproof</orth>
    <pron>dIs"pru:f</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>facts that disprove something.</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2">
    <def>the act of disproving.</def>
  </sense>
</entry>

```

Note Like all elements, <entry> inherits an xml:id attribute from the class *global*. No restrictions are placed on the method used to construct xml:ids; one convenient method is to use the orthographic form of the headword, appending a disambiguating number where necessary. Identification codes are sometimes included on machine-readable tapes of dictionaries for in-house use.

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start of a section or chapter, or on a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by opener model.divWrapper model.titlepagePart model.pLike.front

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
 quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace
textcrit: listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element epigraph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.common | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

<epilogue> contains the epilogue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.frontPart.drama

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb
q quote sp stage
dictionaries: entry superEntry
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace
textcrit: listWit witDetail
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element epilogue
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

(
  ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
  ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
  ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
)
}

```

Example

```

<epilogue>
  <head>Written by <name>Colley Cibber, Esq</name> and spoken by <name>Mrs.
  Cibber</name>
  </head>
  <sp>
    <lg type="couplet">
      <l>Since Fate has robb'd me of the hapless Youth,</l>
      <l>For whom my heart had hoarded up its truth;</l>
    </lg>
    <lg type="couplet">
      <l>By all the Laws of Love and Honour, now,</l>
      <l>I'm free again to chuse, – and one of you</l>
    </lg>
    <lg type="triplet">
      <l>Suppose I search the sober Gallery; – No,</l>
      <l>There's none but Prentices – & Cuckolds all a row:</l>
      <l>And these, I doubt, are those that make 'em so.</l>
    </lg>
    <stage type="business">Pointing to the Boxes.</stage>
    <lg type="couplet">
      <l>'Tis very well, enjoy the jest:</l>
    </lg>
  </sp>
</epilogue>

```

Note Contains optional headings, a sequence of one or more component-level elements, and an optional sequence of closing material.

<etym> (etymology) encloses the etymological information in a dictionary entry.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt)

Used by model.entryPart.top model.entryPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

dictionaries: def gen usg xr

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element etym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | usg              | def              | model.morphLike      | xr              | model.global      )*
}
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>
    <lang>ME.</lang>
    <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>,
    <lang>F.</lang>
    <mentioned>publier</mentioned>, <lang>L.</lang>
    <mentioned>publicare,
      publicatum</mentioned>. <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. 2d
  <ref>--ish</ref>.</xr>
  </etym>
</entry> (From: Webster's Second International)
```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. There is no consensus on the internal structure of etymologies, or even on whether such a structure is appropriate. The <etym> element accordingly simply contains prose, within which names of languages, cited words, or parts of words, glosses, and examples will typically be prominent. The tagging of such internal objects is optional.

<event> (event) contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable
(att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
@precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

@where indicates the location of an event by pointing to a <place> element

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values any valid URI

Used by event listEvent model.persEventLike model.placeEventLike

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: event

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element event
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  attribute where { xsd:anyURI }?,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    event*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<person>
  <event type="mat" when="1972-1972-10-12">
    <label>matriculation</label>
  </event>
  <event type="grad" when="1975-1975-06-23">
    <label>graduation</label>
  </event>
</person>
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

Module core

Used by model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element expan { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>  
<expan>Road</expan>  
<abbr>Rd</abbr>  
</choice>
```

Example

```
<expan xml:lang="la">  
<abbr>Imp</abbr>  
<ex>erator</ex>  
</expan>
```

Note The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the **transcr** module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

<explicit> contains the *explicit* of a manuscript item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

Used by msItemStruct model.msQuoteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element explicit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<explicit>sed libera nos a malo.</explicit>
<rubric>Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.</rubric>
<explicit type="defective">ex materia quasi et forma sibi
proporti<gap/>
</explicit>
<explicit type="reverse">saued be shulle that doome of day the at
</explicit>
```

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text as stored on some carrier medium, whether digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by biblFull fileDesc monogr supportDesc model.biblPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element extent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>

```

<f> (feature) represents a *feature value specification*, that is, the association of a name with a value of any of several different types.

Module iso-fs

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@name provides a name for the feature.

Status Required

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values Any name.

@fVal (feature value) references any element which can be used to represent the value of a feature.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values the identifier of an element representing a feature value

Note If this attribute is supplied as well as content, the value referenced is to be unified with that contained.

Used by fLib fs

May contain

gaiji: g

iso-fs: fs symbol

Declaration

```

element f
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute name { xsd:Name },
  attribute fVal { xsd:anyURI }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.featureVal ) *
}

```

Schematron

```

<s:rule context="tei:fVal">
<s:assert test="not(tei:* and text)"> A feature value cannot
  contain both text and element content</s:assert></s:rule>
<s:rule context="tei:fVal">
<s:report test="count(tei:*)>1"> A feature value can contain
  only one child element</s:report></s:rule>

```

Example

```
<f name="gender">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>
```

Note If the element is empty then a value must be supplied for the fVal attribute.

<fLib> (feature library) assembles a library of feature elements.

Module iso-fs

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.global.meta

May contain

iso-fs: f

Declaration

```
element fLib { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, f+ }
```

Example

```
<fLib n="agreement features">
  <f xml:id="pers1" name="person">
    <symbol value="first"/>
  </f>
  <f xml:id="pers2" name="person">
    <symbol value="second"/>
  </f>
  <f xml:id="nums" name="number">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
  <f xml:id="nump" name="number">
    <symbol value="plural"/>
  </f>
</fLib>
```

Note The global n attribute may be used to supply an informal name to categorise the library's contents.

<faith> specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike
 (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision,
 @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert,
 @resp)) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter,
 @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,
 @to-iso))

Used by model.persTraitLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element faith
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<faith>protestant</faith>
```

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by figure

May contain

core: address bibl biblStruct choice cit date emph foreign label list q quote ref
rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: table
header: biblFull idno
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: listWit

Declaration

```
element figDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>

```

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent `<figure>` element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration or figure.

Module figures

Used by char glyph model.titlepagePart model.divPart

May contain

core: cb gap graphic head index lb milestone note p pb

figures: figDesc formula

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element figure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike | model.pLike | figDesc
    | model.graphicLike | model.egLike | model.global )*
}

```

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
    foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png" scale="0.5"/>
</figure>

```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

Module header

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `teiHeader`

May contain

header: `extent` `notesStmt` `publicationStmt` `seriesStmt` `sourceDesc` `titleStmt`

Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( titleStmt, extent?, publicationStmt, seriesStmt?, notesStmt? ),
    sourceDesc+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<filiation> contains information concerning the manuscript's *filiation*, i.e. its relationship to other surviving manuscripts of the same text, its *protographs*, *antigraphs* and *apographs*.

Module `msdescription`

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.typed` (`@type`,
`@subtype`)

Used by `msItemStruct` `model.msItemPart`

May contain

analysis: `c` `pc` `w`

core: `address` `bibl` `biblStruct` `cb` `choice` `cit` `date` `emph` `foreign` `gap` `graphic` `hi`
`index` `l` `label` `lb` `lg` `list` `milestone` `note` `p` `pb` `q` `quote` `ref` `rs` `sp` `stage` `term` `time`
`title`

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: figure formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element filiation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
  
```

Example

```

<msContents>
  <msItem>
    <title>Beljakovski sbornik</title>
    <filiation type="protograph">Bulgarian</filiation>
    <filiation type="antigraph">Middle Bulgarian</filiation>
    <filiation type="apograph">
      <ref target="#DN17">Dujchev N 17</ref>
    </filiation>
  </msItem>
</msContents>
<msDesc xml:id="DN17">
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Faraway</settlement>
  </msIdentifier>
</msDesc>
  
```

In this example, the reference to “Dujchev N17” includes a link to some other manuscript description which has the identifier **DN17**.

Example

```

<msItem>
  <title>Guan-Guan-ben</title>
  <filiation>
    <p>The "Guan-ben" was widely current among mathematicians in the
      Qing dynasty, and "Zhao Qimei version" was also read. It is
      therefore difficult to know the correct filiation path to follow.
      The study of this era is much indebted to Li Di. We explain the
      outline of his conclusion here. Kong Guangsen
      (1752-1786)(17) was from the same town as Dai Zhen, so he obtained
      "Guan-ben" from him and studied it(18). Li Huang (d. 1811)
      (19) took part in editing Si Ku Quan Shu, so he must have had
      "Guan-ben". Then Zhang Dunren (1754-1834) obtained this version,
    </p>
  </filiation>
</msItem>
  
```

and studied "Da Yan Zong Shu Shu" (The General Dayan Computation). He wrote Jiu Yi Suan Shu (Mathematics Searching for One, 1803) based on this version of Shu Xue Jiu Zhang (20).</p>

<p>One of the most important persons in restoring our knowledge concerning the filiation of these books was Li Rui (1768(21) -1817)(see his biography). ... only two volumes remain of this manuscript, as far as chapter 6 (chapter 3 part 2) p.13, that is, question 2 of "Huan Tian San Ji" (square of three loops), which later has been lost.</p>

</filiation>
</msItem>

<finalRubric> contains the string of words that denotes the end of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, usually set off from the text itself by red ink, by a different size or type of script, or by some other such visual device.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by msItemStruct model.msQuoteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element finalRubric
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<finalRubric>Explicit le romans de la Rose ou l'art
d'amours est toute enclose.</finalRubric>
<finalRubric>ok lúkv ver þar Brennu-Nials savgv</finalRubric>
```

<floruit> contains information about a person's period of activity.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable
 (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
 att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
 @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
 (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Used by model.persStateLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title
 figures: formula
 gaiji: g
 header: idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element floruit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<floruit notBefore="1066" notAfter="1100"/>
```

<foliation> describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element foliation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<foliation>Contemporary foliation in red
roman numerals in the centre
of the outer margin.</foliation>
```

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.emphLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element foreign
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
  
```

Example

This is
 heathen Greek to you still? Your **<foreign xml:lang="la">lapis
 philosophicus</foreign>**?

Note The global xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in CHSH. This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

<forename> contains a forename, given or baptismal name.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.personal (@full,
 @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed
 (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.persNamePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element forename
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <roleName>Ex-Ex-President</roleName>
  <forename>George</forename>
  <surname>Bush</surname>
</persName>
```

<form> (form information group) groups all the information on the written and spoken forms of one headword.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt)

@type classifies form as lemma (line), headword or simple.

Status Required

Datatype xsd>Name

Legal values are: **lemma** (lemma, containing the headword)

headword (the headword itself)

simple (single free lexical item)

Used by entry model.entryPart.top model.entryPart model.formPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

dictionaries: form gen gramGrp pos subc usg

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element form
{
  attribute type { "lemma" | "headword" | "simple" },
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  (
    (
      text
      | model.gLike          | model.phrase
      | model.inter         | model.formPart      | model.global      )*)
  )
}
  
```

Example

```

<form>
  <orth>zaptié</orth>
  <orth>zaptyé</orth>
</form>
  
```

(from TLFi)

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@notation (The notation used to express this formula) supplies the name of a
 previously defined notation used for the content of the element.

Status Required

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values The name of a formal notation previously declared in the
 document type declaration.

Used by model.graphicLike

May contain

core: graphic
figures: formula

Declaration

```
element formula
{
  attribute notation { xsd:anyURI },
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.graphicLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<formula notation="TeX">$e=mc^2$</formula>
```

Note

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by text

May contain

core: cb gap head index lb milestone note pb
drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
textcrit: witDetail
textstructure: byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
```

```

)
}

```

Example

```

<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
    <q xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat
      illa: <q xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>
    </quote>
  </epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
    </p>
  </div>
</front>

```

Example

```

<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently.
      ...</p>
  </div>
</front>

```

<fs> (feature structure) represents a *feature structure*, that is, a collection of feature-value pairs organized as a structural unit.

Module iso-fs

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
 (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

@type specifies the type of the feature structure.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values Character string, e.g. *word structure*.

@feats (features) references the feature-value specifications making up this feature structure.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values one or more identifiers of `<f>` elements.

Note May be used either instead of having features as content, or in addition. In the latter case, the features referenced and contained are unified.

Used by `model.featureVal.complex` `model.global.meta`

May contain

iso-fs: f

Declaration

```

element fs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute feats { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?,
  f*
}

```

Example

```

<fs type="agreement_structure">
  <f name="person">
    <symbol value="third"/>
  </f>
  <f name="number">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
</fs>

```

<g> (character or glyph) represents a non-standard character or glyph.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@ref points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values a pointer to some another element.

Used by model.gLike

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```

element g
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ref { xsd:anyURI }?,
  text
}

```

Example

```

<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>

```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier **ctlig** like the following:

```

<glyph xml:id="ctlig"/>

```

Example

```

<g ref="#per-#per-glyph">per</g>

```

The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier **per** like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="per-per-glyph"/>
```

Note The name *g* is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

<gap> (*gap*) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

Module core

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`))) (`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))

@reason gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`
separated by whitespace

Values any short indication of the reason for the omission.

@hand in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, signifies the hand which made the deletion.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section PHDH).

@agent In the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Used by `model.global.edit`

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" },

```

```

        token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }*
      }
    }?,
    attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
    attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
    model.glossLike*
  }
}

```

Example

```
<gap extent="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"/>
```

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section PHCOMB for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<gb/> (gathering begins) marks the point in a transcribed codex at which a new gathering or quire begins.

Module transcr

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element gb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}

```

Example

Note By convention, <gb> elements should appear at the start of the first page in the gathering. The global n attribute indicates the number or other value used to identify this gathering in a collation. The type attribute may be used to further characterize the gathering in any respect.

<gen> (gender) identifies the morphological gender of a lexical item, as given in the dictionary.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.lexicographic
(*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*)

Used by model.entryPart model.morphLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element gen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
  
```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>pamplemousse</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>noun</pos>
    <gen>masculine</gen>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
  
```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be *masculine*, *feminine*, *neuter* etc. This element is synonymous with `<gram type="gender">`.

<genName> (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.personal (@full,
@sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed
(@type, @subtype)

Used by model.persNamePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element genName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Charles</forename>
  <genName>II</genName>
</persName>
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <surname>Pitt</surname>
  <genName>the Younger</genName>
</persName>
```

<geo> (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation.

Module namesdates

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global-linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global-analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global-facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `model.measureLike`

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element geo { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<geo>41.687142 -74.870109</geo>
```

Note All uses of `<geo>` within a document are required to use the same coordinate system, which is that defined by a `<geoDecl>` element supplied in the TEI Header. If no such element is supplied, the assumption is that the content of each `<geo>` element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.

<geogFeat> (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc.

Module `namesdates`

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global-linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global-analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global-facs` (`@facs`)) `att.naming` (`@role`,
`@nymRef`) (`att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`) `att.datable`
(`att.datable.w3c` (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`))
(`att.datable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`))

Used by `model.offsetLike`

May contain

`gaiji`: `g`

Declaration

```
element geogFeat  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.naming.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.datable.attributes,  
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<geogName> The <geogFeat>vale</geogFeat> of White Horse</geogName>
```

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.

Module `gaiji`

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global-linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global-analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global-facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `charDecl`

May contain

core: graphic note
figures: figure formula
gaiji: charProp glyphName mapping
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element glyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    glyphName?,
    model.glossLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
  <glyphName>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</glyphName>
  <charProp>
    <localName>entity</localName>
    <value>rstroke</value>
  </charProp>
  <figure>
    <graphic url="glyph-glyph-rstroke.png"/>
  </figure>
</glyph>
```

<glyphName> (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by glyph

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element glyphName { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<glyphName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</glyphName>
```

Note For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an *Ideographic Description Sequence* (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <glyphName>s to facilitate data exchange.

<gramGrp> (grammatical information group) groups morpho-syntactic information about a lexical item, e.g. <pos>, <gen>, <number>, <case>, or <iType> (inflectional class).

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt)

Used by model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.gramPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

dictionaries: gen gramGrp pos subc usg

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element gramGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  pos,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | model.gramPart  | model.global  )*
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>luire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>verb</pos>
    <subc>intransitive</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

<graphic> indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.internetMedia
(@mimeType)

@url (The notation used to express this formula) A URL which refers to the
image itself.

Status Required

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Used by model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element graphic
{
  attribute url { xsd:anyURI },
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  model.glossLike*
}
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note The mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the
image specified by the url attribute.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct
texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for
example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by group text

May contain

core: cb gap head index lb milestone note pb

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener
postscript salute signed text trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
    model.divBottom*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<text>
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text/>
    <text/>
  </group>
</text>

```

<handDesc> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@hands specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:nonNegativeInteger

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

core: p

header: handNote

msdescription: summary

Declaration

```

element handDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute hands { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, handNote+ ) )
}

```

Example

```

<handDesc>
  <handNote scope="major">Written throughout in <term>angelicana
  formata</term>.</handNote>
</handDesc>

```

Example

```
<handDesc hands="2">
  <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise
  unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes
  ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably
  Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand
  on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p>
</handDesc>
```

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Used by handDesc handNotes

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element handNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<handNote scope="sole">
  <p>Written in insular phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an
  Anglo-Saxon pointed minuscule.</p>
</handNote>
```

<handNotes> contains one or more **<handNote>** elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts.

Module transcr

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

Used by model.profileDescPart

May contain

header: handNote

Declaration

```
element handNotes { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, handNote+ }
```

Example

```
<handNotes>
  <handNote xml:id="H1" script="copperplate" medium="brown-brown-ink">Carefully
written with regular descenders</handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="H2" script="print" medium="pencil">Unschool ed
scrawl</handNote>
</handNotes>
```

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype)

Used by model.headLike model.pLike.front

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical
  history of
    Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and
    twelve
      years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and
    ninety-six
      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
    Martin.</trailer>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

Example The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists: With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument.

```
<list type="simple">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
</list>
```

Note The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

<height> contains a measurement measured along the axis at right angles to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. parallel to the spine for a codex or book.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))

Used by model.measureLike model.dimLike

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element height
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<height unit="in" quantity="7"/>
```

Note If used to specify the height of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis perpendicular to the surface of the earth.

<heraldry> contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element heraldry
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<p>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms
<heraldry>A bull passant within a bordure bezanty,
  in chief a crescent for difference</heraldry> [Cole],
crest, and the legend <q>Cole Deum</q>.</p>
```

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

Module core

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `model.hiLike`

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

<history> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Used by msDesc msPart

May contain

core: p

msdescription: acquisition origin provenance summary

Declaration

```
element history
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, origin?, provenance*, acquisition? ) )
}
```

Example

```
<history>
  <origin>
    <p>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth
      century.</p>
  </origin>
  <provenance>
    <p>Recorded in two medieval
      catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and
      1405.</p>
    <p>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)
      and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne)
      according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</p>
  </provenance>
  <acquisition>
    <p>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by
      Thomas Gale and his son Roger.</p>
  </acquisition>
</history>
```

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number,
etc.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Used by altIdentifier biblStruct monogr msIdentifier seriesStmt model.nameLike
model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
attribute type { xsd:Name }?,  
macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<idno type="ISSN">0143-0143-3385</idno>  
<idno type="DOI">doi:10.1000/123</idno>  
<idno type="URL">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>  
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>  
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>  
<idno type="oldCat">  
  <g ref="#sym"/>345  
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.

<imprimatur> contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.titlepagePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element imprimatur  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

<imprint> groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by monogr

May contain

core: cb date gap index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher time

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element imprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( ( model.imprintPart ) | ( model.dateLike ) ), model.global* )+
}
```

Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

<incipit> contains the *incipit* of a manuscript item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any *rubric* which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used a means of reference to a work, in place of a title.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

Used by msItemStruct model.msQuoteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element incipit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<incipit>Pater noster qui es in celis</incipit>
<incipit defective="true">tatem dedit hominibus alleluia.</incipit>
<incipit type="biblical">Ghif ons huden onse dagelix broet</incipit>
<incipit>0 ongehoeerde gewerdighe christi</incipit>
<incipit type="lemma">Firmiter</incipit>
<incipit>Ideo dicit firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non potest</incipit>
```

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.spanning
(@spanTo)

@indexName (You must indicate the type of this index) supplies a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status Required

Datatype xsd:Name

Values an application-specific name, consisting of Unicode characters only.

Legal values are: **name**

place

subject

citation

other

Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Used by index model.global.meta

May contain

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

core: index term

Declaration

```
element index
{
  attribute indexName { "name" | "place" | "subject" | "citation" | "other" },
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  ( term, index? )*
}
```

Example

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura <index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
```

<institution> contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript is identified, generally its holding institution.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element institution
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
}
```

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
  <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

<item> contains one component of a list.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by list

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
 title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: figure formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<list type="ordered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church
revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global `n` attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not `n`.

<1> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

Module core

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.metrical` (`@met`,
`@real`, `@rhyme`) `att.enjamb` (`@enjamb`)

@part specifies whether or not the line is metrically complete.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the line is metrically incomplete

N (no) either the line is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]

I (initial) the initial part of an incomplete line

M (medial) a medial part of an incomplete line

F (final) the final part of an incomplete line

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the line is to be reconstituted.

Used by `model.lLike`

May contain

`analysis:` c pc w

`core:` address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

`drama:` camera caption castList move sound tech view

`figures:` formula table

`gaiji:` g

`header:` biblFull idno

`iso-fs:` fLib fs

`linking:` anchor

`msdescription:` catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

`namesdates:` addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

`textcrit:` app listWit witDetail

`transcr:` addSpan delSpan gb surplus

`verse:` caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.metrical.attributes,
  att.enjamb.attributes,
  attribute part { "Y" | "N" | "I" | "M" | "F" }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<l met="--/-/-/-/-/" part="Y"/>
```

<label> contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by list model.labelLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element label { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example Labels are most commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global xml:lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit>
```

```

</item>
<label>verteth</label>
<item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
<label>murie</label>
<item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
<label>swik</label>
<item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
<label>naver</label>
<item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>

```

Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the n attribute on the <item> element:

```

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to
the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author
and the
printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>

```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```

<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos
cedamus
  amori.</quote>
</item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>

```

<lacunaEnd/> indicates the end of a lacuna in a mostly complete textual witness.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Used by model.rdgPart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element lacunaEnd
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.rdgPart.attributes,

```

```
    empty
  }
```

Example

```
<rdg wit="#X">
  <lacunaEnd/>auctorite
</rdg>
```

<lacunaStart/> indicates the beginning of a lacuna in the text of a mostly complete textual witness.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Used by model.rdgPart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element lacunaStart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.rdgPart.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#E1 #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>
    <lacunaStart/>
  </rdg>
</app>
```

<langKnowledge> (language knowledge) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of <langKnown> elements.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@tags supplies one or more valid language tags for the languages specified

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:language` separated by whitespace

Note This attribute should be supplied only if the element contains no `<langKnown>` children. Its values are language “tags” as defined in RFC 4646 or its successor

Used by `model.persTraitLike`

May contain

core: `p`

namesdates: `langKnown`

Declaration

```

element langKnowledge
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute tags { list { xsd:language, xsd:language* } }?,
  ( model.pLike | langKnown+ )
}

```

Example

```

<langKnowledge tags="en-en-GB fr">
  <p>British English and French</p>
</langKnowledge>

```

Example

```

<langKnowledge>
  <langKnown tag="en-en-GB" level="H">British English</langKnown>
  <langKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</langKnown>
</langKnowledge>

```

<langKnown> (language known) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic competence, i.e., knowledge of a single language.

Module `namesdates`

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.dateable` (`att.dateable.w3c` (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`)) (`att.dateable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`)) `att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`)) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`)) (`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`))

@tag supplies a valid language tag for the language concerned.

Status Required

Datatype `xsd:language`

Note The value for this attribute should be a language “tag” as defined in BCP 47.

@level a code indicating the person's level of knowledge for this language

Status Optional

Datatype

```

token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }

```

Used by `langKnowledge`

May contain

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap index lb milestone note pb ref rs
term time title
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element langKnown
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute tag { xsd:language },
  attribute level { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<langKnown tag="en-en-GB" level="H">British English</langKnown>
<langKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</langKnown>
```

<layout> describes how text is laid out on the page, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@columns specifies the number of columns per page

Status Optional

Datatype 1–2 occurrences of `xsd:nonNegativeInteger` separated by whitespace

Values may be given as a pair of numbers (to indicate a range) or as a single number.

@ruledLines specifies the number of ruled lines per column

Status Optional

Datatype 1–2 occurrences of `xsd:nonNegativeInteger` separated by whitespace

Values may be given as a pair of numbers (a range) or as a single number.

@writtenLines specifies the number of written lines per column

Status Optional

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Datatype 1–2 occurrences of `xsd:nonNegativeInteger` separated by whitespace

Values may be given as a pair of numbers (a range), or as a single number.

Used by layoutDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element layout
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute columns
  {
    list { xsd:nonNegativeInteger, xsd:nonNegativeInteger? }
  }?,
  attribute ruledLines
  {
    list { xsd:nonNegativeInteger, xsd:nonNegativeInteger? }
  }?,
  attribute writtenLines
  {
    list { xsd:nonNegativeInteger, xsd:nonNegativeInteger? }
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32">Most pages have between 25 and 32 long  
lines ruled in lead.</layout>
```

Example

```
<layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">  
<p>2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule
```



```
    between the columns.</p>
</layout>
```

Example

```
<layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50">
  <p>Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule
    between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of writing.</p>
</layout>
```

<layoutDesc> (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by objectDesc

May contain

core: p
msdescription: layout summary

Declaration

```
element layoutDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.plike+ | ( summary?, layout+ ) )
}
```

Example

```
<layoutDesc>
  <p>Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.</p>
</layoutDesc>
```

Example

```
<layoutDesc>
  <layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">
    <p>
      <locus from="f12r" to="f15v"/>
      2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with
      central rule between the columns.</p>
    </layout>
  <layout columns="3">
    <p>
      <locus from="f16"/>□□□□□□.</p>
    </layout>
  </layoutDesc>
```

<lb/> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype) att.sourced (*@ed*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sourced.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our woe,</l>
```

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart rend="italic">
  <lb/>L'auteur susdict supplie les Lecteurs
<lb/>benevoles, soy reserver à rire au
soi-<lb break="no"/>xante & dixhuytiesme livre.
</titlePart>
```

Note By convention, `<lb>` elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The `n` attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next `<lb>` element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the `<l>` element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialised attributes `break` and `ed` should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

<lem> (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.textCritical (*@wit*,
@type, *@cause*, *@varSeq*, *@hand*) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

Used by app rdgGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element lem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | model.global    | model.rdgPart   )*
}

```

Example

```

<app>
  <lem wit="#E1 #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>
</app>

```

Note The term *lemma* is used in text criticism to describe the reading in the text itself (as opposed to those in the apparatus); this usage is distinct from that of mathematics (where a lemma is a major step in a proof) and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary form associated with an inflected form in the running text).

<lg> (line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.divLike
 (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by lg sp model.divPart

May contain

core: cb gap head index l lb lg milestone note pb
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 textcrit: witDetail
 textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
 postscript salute signed trailer
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | lg | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>

```

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@type describes the form of the list.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **ordered** list items are numbered or lettered.

bulleted list items are marked with a bullet or other typographic device.

simple list items are not numbered or bulleted. [Default]

gloss each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

Note The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Used by revisionDesc model.listLike

May contain

- core: cb gap head index item label lb milestone note pb
- iso-fs: fLib fs
- linking: anchor
- textcrit: witDetail
- textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer
- transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "ordered" | "bulleted" | "simple" | "gloss" | xsd:Name }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | ( ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+ )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<list type="ordered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with <list type="bullets">
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>
    <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>

```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```

<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list type="ordered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence. <list type="ordered">
      <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account – or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
      <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
    </list>

```

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

```
<item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days,
and he may
    then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand
surety for him
    that he will desist for ever.</item>
<item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
wergild,
    or to bring him back there.</item>
<item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his
wergild,
    whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone
of those who
    supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless
men, from whom
    no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch
back such a
    person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list type="ordered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that
appointed day,
        he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is
to strike him
        down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his
wergild
        or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and
upholds
    his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of
the goods and
    120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands
justice as
    often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if
he had
    refused him justice. <list type="ordered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and
it becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild
on the first
        occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that
he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves,
who has been
        an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the
same.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning
treachery to
    a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it
or is
    afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ...
and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and
afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of
the Holy
Cross. <list type="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have
    subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign
of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
  the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed
with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed
with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the
sign of
  the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout
will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the
Holy
  Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>
```

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

<listEvent> (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default)

Used by listEvent model.listLike

May contain

core: head
namesdates: event listEvent relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listEvent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( event | listEvent )+, ( relation | relationGrp )* )
}
```

Example

```

<listEvent>
  <head>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</head>
  <event xml:id="event01" when="1861-1861-09-19">
    <label>Barbourville</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of
      the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox
      County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate
      Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in
      the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who
      rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion,
      which was finally thwarted at the <ref target="#event02">Battle of
      Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</desc>
  </event>
  <event xml:id="event02" when="1861-1861-10-21">
    <label>Camp Wild Cat</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp
      Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil
      War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky
      during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The
      battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked
      the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</desc>
  </event>
  <event xml:id="event03" from="1864-1864-06-11" to="1864-1864-06-12">
    <label>Cynthiana</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar's Bridge) was an engagement
      during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,
      in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of
      Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into
      Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the
      raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc>
  </event>
</listEvent>

```

<listNym> (list of canonical names) contains a list of nyms, that is, standardized names for any thing.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype) att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by listNym model.listLike

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listNym nym relation relationGrp

Declaration

```

element listNym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( nym | listNym )+, ( relationGrp | relation )* )
}

```

Example


```
<listNym type="floral">
  <nym xml:id="ROSE">
    <form>Rose</form>
  </nym>
  <nym xml:id="DAISY">
    <form>Daisy</form>
    <etym>Contraction of <mentioned>day's eye</mentioned>
  </etym>
  </nym>
  <nym xml:id="HTHR">
    <form>Heather</form>
  </nym>
</listNym>
```

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of names of a particular type if convenient.

<listOrg> (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default)

Used by listOrg model.listLike

May contain

core: head
namesdates: listOrg org relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listOrg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( org | listOrg )+, ( relationGrp | relation )* )
}
```

Example

```
<listOrg>
  <head>Libyans</head>
  <org>
    <orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName>
    <desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of bronze [...]. </desc>
  </org>
  <org>
    <orgName>Nasamonians</orgName>
    <desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the palms [...]. </desc>
  </org>
  <org>
    <orgName>Garamantians</orgName>
```

```

<desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no
  weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc>
</org>
</listOrg>

```

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
 @subtype) att.declarable (@default)

Used by listPerson model.listLike

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listPerson org person personGrp relation relationGrp

Declaration

```

element listPerson
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.personLike | listPerson )+,
    ( relation | relationGrp )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<listPerson type="respondents">
  <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
  <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>
  <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>
  <relationGrp>
    <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
  </relationGrp>
</listPerson>

```

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype) att.declarable (*@default*)

Used by listPlace place model.listLike

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listPlace place relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )+,
    ( relationGrp | relation )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
  <place>
    <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
  </place>
  <place>
    <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
  </place>
</listPlace>
```

<listWit> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)

(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

Used by listWit model.listLike

May contain

core: head

textcrit: listWit witness

Declaration

```
element listWit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.headLike?, ( witness | listWit )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<listWit>
  <witness xml:id="HL26">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
```

```
<witness xml:id="PN392">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,  
  Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>  
<witness xml:id="RP149">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149  
  (see further <ptr target="#MSRP149"/>)</witness>  
</listWit>
```

Note May contain a series of <witness> or <listWit> elements.

The provision of a <listWit> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus. Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single <listWit> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the <witStart> and <witEnd> elements described in section TCAPMI. Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single <listWit> element.

<localName> (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by charProp

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element localName { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, text }
```

Example

```
<localName>daikanwa</localName>  
<localName>entity</localName>
```

Note No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name entity is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph.

<location> defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of a other named geo-political entities, or as an address.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter,
@from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,
@to-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Used by model.placeTraitLike

May contain

core: address bibl biblStruct label note
header: biblFull
msdescription: depth dim height msDesc width
namesdates: affiliation country geo geogFeat offset settlement
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element location
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  (
    model.labelLike | model.placeNamePart
    | model.offsetLike | model.measureLike | model.addressLike | model.noteLike
  )
}
```

Example

```
<place>
  <placeName>Abbey Dore</placeName>
  <location>
    <geo>51.969604 -2.893146</geo>
  </location>
</place>
```

Example

```
<place type="building">
  <placeName>Brasserie Georges</placeName>
  <location>
    <country key="FR"/>
    <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
    <district type="arrondissement">Perrache</district>
    <placeName type="street">Rue de la Charité</placeName>
  </location>
</place>
```

Example

```
<place type="imaginary">
  <placeName>Atlantis</placeName>
  <location>
    <offset>beyond</offset>
    <placeName>The Pillars of <persName>Hercules</persName>
  </placeName>
  </location>
</place>
```

<locus> defines a location within a manuscript or manuscript part, usually as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.pointing (@target, @evaluate)

@scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which the location is being specified.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values A pointer to some <foliation> element which defines the foliation scheme used, or an external link to some equivalent resource.

@from specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }
```

Values typically this will be a page number

@to specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }
```

Values typically this will be a page number

Used by locusGrp msItem msItemStruct model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element locus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute from { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
  attribute to { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<msItem n="1">
  <locus target="#F1r #F1v #F2r" from="1r" to="2r">ff. 1r-2r</locus>
  <author>Ben Jonson</author>
  <title>Ode to himself</title>
  <rubric rend="italics"> An Ode<lb/> to him selfe.</rubric>
  <incipit>Com leaue the loathed stage</incipit>
  <explicit>And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit>
  <bibl>
    <name>Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl>
</msItem>
<pb xml:id="F1r"/>
<pb xml:id="F1v"/>
<pb xml:id="F2r"/>
```

Example The `facfs` attribute is available globally when the `transcr` module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:

```
<msItem>
  <locus
    facfs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg
    images/10v.jpg">fols. 8v-10v</locus>
  <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
```

```
<bibl>
  <title>IMEV</title>
  <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
</bibl>
</msItem>
```

Note The target attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a <locus> element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global facs attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the target attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecated. The facs attribute may be used to indicate one or more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the <surface>, <zone> element, <graphic>, or <binaryObject> elements.

<locusGrp> groups a number of locations which together form a distinct but discontinuous item within a manuscript or manuscript part, according to a specific foliation.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which all the locations contained by the group are specified.

Status Optional

Datatype **xsd:anyURI**

Values A pointer to some <foliation> element which defines the foliation scheme used, or an external link to some equivalent resource.

Used by msItem model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

msdescription: locus

Declaration

```
element locusGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
  locus+
}
```

Example

```
<msItem>
  <locusGrp>
    <locus from="13" to="26">Bl. 13--26</locus>
    <locus from="37" to="58">37-37--58</locus>
    <locus from="82" to="96">82-82--96</locus>
  </locusGrp>
  <note>Stücke von Daniel Ecklin's Reise ins h. Land</note>
</msItem>
```

Note

<mapping> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the type attribute.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype)

Used by char glyph

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element mapping
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
```

Note Suggested values for the type attribute include **exact** for exact equivalences, **uppercase** for uppercase equivalences, **lowercase** for lowercase equivalences, and **simplified** for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph> element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.

<material> contains a word or phrase describing the material of which the object being described is composed.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key,
@ref)

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element material
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<physDesc>
  <p>
    <material>Parchment</material> leaves with a
    <material>sharkskin</material> binding.</p>
</physDesc>
```

Note The ref attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of material, defined either internally or externally.

<milestone/> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype) att.sourced (@ed) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

@unit (You must indicate the unit that this milestone marks. The proposed values have been taken from the P5 documentation) provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Status Required

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Legal values are: **book**

poem
canto
stanza
act
scene
section
absent

Note If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of unit. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered. In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element milestone
{
  attribute unit
  {
    "book"
    | "poem"
    | "canto"
    | "stanza"
    | "act"
    | "scene"
    | "section"
    | "absent"
  },
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sourced.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note For this element, the global n attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

<monogr> (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object).

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by biblStruct

May contain

core: author editor imprint note ref title
header: edition extent idno

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element monogr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      (
        ( author | editor ),
        ( author | editor )*,
        title+,
        ( idno | editor )*
      )
      | ( ( title | ref )+, ( idno | author | editor )* )
    )?,
    model.noteLike*,
    ( edition, ( idno | editor )* )*,
    imprint,
    ( imprint | extent )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <analytic>
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
    <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
    <imprint>
      <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
      <date when="1991-1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
      <biblScope>377-377-380</biblScope>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

Example

```
<biblStruct type="book">
  <monogr>
    <author>
      <persName>
        <forename>Leo Joachim</forename>
        <surname>Frachtenberg</surname>
      </persName>
    </author>
    <title type="main" level="m">Lower Umpqua Texts</title>
    <imprint>
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
      <publisher>Columbia University Press</publisher>
      <date>1914</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
  <series>
    <title type="main" level="s">Columbia University Contributions to
      Anthropology</title>
    <biblScope type="vol">4</biblScope>
  </series>
</biblStruct>
```

Note May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order. The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an monographic level bibliographic item.

<**move**/> (movement) marks the actual entrance or exit of one or more characters on stage.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.ascribed (@who)

@type characterizes the movement, for example as an entrance or exit.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **entrance** character is entering the stage.

exit character is exiting the stage.

onStage character moves on stage

@where specifies the direction of a stage movement.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

Sample values include: **L** (left) stage left

R (right) stage right

C (center) centre stage

Note Full blocking information will normally require combinations of values, (for example “UL” for “upper stage left”) and may also require more detailed encoding of speed, direction etc. Full documentation of any coding system used should be provided in the header.

@perf (performance) identifies the performance or performances in which this movement occurred as specified.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values The references are derived from the xml:id attribute on a <performance> element.

Used by model.stageLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element move
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute type { "entrance" | "exit" | "onStage" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute where { list { xsd:Name, xsd:Name* } }?,
  attribute perf { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?,
  empty
}

```

Example

```
<performance xml:id="perf1">
  <p>First performance</p>
  <castList>
    <castItem>
      <role xml:id="bellaf">Bellafront</role>
    </castItem>
  </castList>
</performance>
<stage type="entrance">
  <move
    who="#bellaf"
    type="enter"
    where="L"
    perf="#perf1"/> Enter
  Bellafront mad.
</stage>
```

<msContents> (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.msExcerpt (*@defective*)

@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this object.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values One or more codes, each of which is used as the identifier for a text classification element supplied in the TEI Header `<textClass>` element.

Used by msDesc msPart

May contain

core: p

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct summary textLang

textstructure: titlePage

Declaration

```
element msContents
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  attribute class { xsd:anyURI }?,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( summary?, textLang?, titlePage?, ( msItem
    | msItemStruct )* )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<msContents>
  <p>A collection of Lollard sermons</p>
</msContents>
```

Example

```
<msContents>
  <msItem n="1">
    <locus>fols. 5r-7v</locus>
    <title>An ABC</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>239</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="2">
    <locus>fols. 7v-8v</locus>
    <title xml:lang="FR">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>3747</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="3">
    <locus>fol. 8v</locus>
    <title>Truth</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>809</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="4">
    <locus>fols. 8v-10v</locus>
    <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="5">
    <locus>fols. 10v-11v</locus>
    <title xml:lang="LA">De amico ad amicam</title>
    <title xml:lang="LA">Responcio</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>16 & 19</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="6">
    <locus>fols. 14r-126v</locus>
    <title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
    <note>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
throughout</note>
  </msItem>
</msContents>
```

Note Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema.

<msDesc> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.biblLike

May contain

core: head p

msdescription: additional history msContents msIdentifier msPart physDesc

Declaration

```
element msDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    msIdentifier,
    model.headLike*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )
    )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<msDesc>
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
    <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
    <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msContents>
    <msItem>
      <author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author>
      <title>The Canterbury Tales</title>
    </msItem>
  </msContents>
  <physDesc>
    <objectDesc>
      <p>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx
        28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</p>
      <p>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</p>
      <p>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44
        folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the
        remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.</p>
    </objectDesc>
  </physDesc>
</msDesc>
```

<msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described.

Module msdescription

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `msDesc` `model.biblPart`

May contain

header: `idno`

`msdescription`: `altIdentifier` `collection` `institution` `msName` `repository`

`namesdates`: `country` `settlement`

Declaration

```
element msIdentifier
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      model.placeNamePart_sequenceOptional,
      institution?,
      repository?,
      collection*,
      idno?
    ),
    ( msName | altIdentifier )*
  )
}
```

Schematron

```
<s:report
  test="local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or .=''">You must supply
  name</s:report>
```

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
  <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
  <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

<msItem> (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part.

Module `msdescription`

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.msExcerpt`
(`@defective`)

`@class` identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values One or more codes, each of which is used as the identifier for a text classification element supplied in the TEI Header `<textClass>` element.

Used by `msContents` `model.msItemPart`

May contain

core: author bibl cb cit editor gap graphic index lb milestone note p pb quote
title
figures: figure
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus
locusGrp msItem msItemStruct rubric textLang
textcrit: witDetail
textstructure: byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle
epigraph imprimatur titlePart
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element msItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  attribute class { xsd:anyURI }?,
  (
    ( locus | locusGrp )*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( model.titlepagePart | model.msItemPart
        | model.global )+
    )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<msItem>
  <locus>ff. 1r-24v</locus>
  <title>Agrid af Noregs konunga sögum</title>
  <incipit>regi oc h<ex>ann</ex> setiho
  <gap reason="illegible" extent="7"/>sc
  heim se<ex>m</ex> þio</incipit>
  <explicit>h<ex>on</ex> hev<ex>er</ex>
  <ex>oc</ex>þa buit hesta .ij. aNan vip
  fé enh<ex>on</ex>o<ex>m</ex> aNan til
  reip<ex>ar</ex>
</explicit>
  <textLang mainLang="non">Old Norse/Icelandic</textLang>
</msItem>
```

<msItemStruct> (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.msExcerpt (@defective)
@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values One or more codes, each of which is used as the identifier for a text classification element supplied in the TEI Header `<textClass>` element.

Used by `msContents msItemStruct model.msItemPart`

May contain

core: author bibl note p title

msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus
msItemStruct rubric textLang

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element msItemStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  attribute class { xsd:anyURI }?,
  (
    locus?,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | (
        author*,
        title*,
        rubric?,
        incipit?,
        msItemStruct*,
        explicit?,
        finalRubric?,
        colophon*,
        decoNote*,
        bibl*,
        filiation*,
        model.noteLike*,
        textLang?
      )
    )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<msItemStruct n="2" defective="false" class="biblComm">
  <locus from="24v" to="97v">24v-24v-97v</locus>
  <author>Apringius de Beja</author>
  <title type="uniform" xml:lang="lat">Tractatus in Apocalypsin</title>
  <rubric>Incipit Trac<supplied reason="omitted">ta</supplied>tus
    in apoka<lb/>lipsin eruditissimi uiri <lb/> Apringi ep<expan>iscop</expan>i
    Pacensis eccl<expan>esi</expan>e</rubric>
  <finalRubric>EXPLIC<expan>IT</expan> EXPO<lb/>SITIO APOCALIPSIS
    QVA<expan>M</expan> EXPOSVIT DOM<lb/>NVS APRINGIUS EP<expan>ISCOPU</expan>S.
    DEO GR<expan>ACI</expan>AS AGO. FI<lb/>NITO LABORE ISTO.</finalRubric>
  <bibl>
    <ref target="http://amiBibl.xml#Apringius1900">Apringius</ref>, ed.
    Férotin</bibl>
  <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItemStruct>
```

<msName> (alternative name) contains any form of unstructured alternative name used for a manuscript, such as an “ocellus nominum”, or nickname.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element msName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}

```

Example

<msName>The Vercelli Book</msName>

<msPart> (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript, now forming part of a composite manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by msDesc msPart

May contain

core: head p

msdescription: additional altIdentifier history msContents msPart physDesc

Declaration

```
element msPart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    altIdentifier,
    model.headLike*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )
    )
  )
}

```

Example

```
<msDesc>
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Amiens</settlement>
    <repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
    <idno>MS 3</idno>
    <msName>Maurdramnus Bible</msName>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msPart>
    <altIdentifier>
      <idno>MS 6</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msPart>
</msDesc>
```

<musicNotation> contains description of type of musical notation.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element musicNotation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<musicNotation>
  <p>Square notation of 4-line red staves.</p>
</musicNotation>
```

Example

```
<musicNotation>Neumes in <term>campo aperto</term> of the St. Gall type.
</musicNotation>
```

<nameLink> (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as *van der* or *of*.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.persNamePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element nameLink
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <nameLink>van der</nameLink>
  <surname>Tronck</surname>
</persName>
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Alfred</forename>
  <nameLink>de</nameLink>
  <surname>Musset</surname>
</persName>
```

<nationality> contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by model.persTraitLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element nationality
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<nationality key="US" notBefore="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in  
1966</nationality>
```

<normalization> indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.declarable
(*@default*)

@source indicates the authority for any normalization carried out.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values Points to a bibliographic description or other resource documenting the principles underlying the normalization which has been applied.

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **silent** normalization made silently [Default]

markup normalization represented using markup

Used by model.editorialDeclPart

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element normalization  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declarable.attributes,  
  attribute source { xsd:anyURI }?,  
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,  
  model.pLike+  
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>  
  <normalization method="markup">  
    <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been normalized, to  
modern  
20th century typographical practice, the <gi>choice</gi> element has been  
used to  
enclose <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original and new  
values  
respectively. ... </p>  
  </normalization>  
  <normalization method="silent">  
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized to zero  
spaces;  
spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</p>  
  </normalization>
```

```
<normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
  <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on Websters 9th
    Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</normalization>
</editorialDecl>
```

<note> contains a note or annotation.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) att.placement
 (*@place*) att.pointing (*@target*, *@evaluate*) att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*) att.typed
 (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. “page 218, lines 3–4”). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the n attribute.

@place (The place of the note should be specified whenever the note refers to a note present in the original text. The current text is a simplified version of the P5 one)

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

Legal values are: **margin**

other

app

foot

end

inline

interlinear

```
<add
  place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
<add
  place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
  foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

```
<note
  place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```


@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values A pointer to an element in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

@type (The place of the note must be specified. The current text is a simplified version of the P5 one) characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Legal values are: **annotation**

gloss

citation

other

Used by altIdentifier model.noteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element note
{
  attribute anchored { xsd:boolean }?,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attributes,
  att.global.facs.attributes,
  attribute place
  {
    list
    {
      (
        "margin"
        | "other"
        | "app"
        | "foot"
        | "end"
        | "inline"
        | "interlinear"
      ),
      (
        "margin"
        | "other"
        | "app"
        | "foot"
        | "end"
        | "inline"
        | "interlinear"
      )*
    }
  }
  }?,
  attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  att.responsibility.attribute.cert,
  attribute resp { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?,
  attribute type { "annotation" | "gloss" | "citation" | "other" }?,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH"> <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. </note> style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI Header:

```
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

Example The global `n` attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note n="126" anchored="true"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a
reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from Geniza
documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

Module header

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: note

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element notesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  model.noteLike+
}
```

Example

```
<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

<nym> (canonical name) contains the definition for a canonical name or namepart of any kind.

Module namesdates


```

        xsd:anyURI?
    }
}?,
( ( model.entryPart* ), ( model.pLike* ), ( nym* ) )
}

```

Example

```

<nym xml:id="J452">
  <form>
    <orth xml:lang="en-en-US">Ian</orth>
    <orth xml:lang="en-en-x-Scots">Iain</orth>
  </form>
</nym>

```

<objectDesc> contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.links (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

@form a short project-specific name identifying the physical form of the carrier,
 for example as a codex, roll, fragment, partial leaf, cutting etc.

Status Optional

Datatype **xsd>Name**

Values a short project-defined name

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

core: p

msdescription: layoutDesc supportDesc

Declaration

```

element objectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute form { xsd>Name }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( supportDesc?, layoutDesc? ) )
}

```

Example

```

<objectDesc form="codex">
  <supportDesc material="mixed">
    <p>Early modern
    <material>parchment</material> and
    <material>paper</material>.</p>
  </supportDesc>
  <layoutDesc>
    <layout ruledLines="25 32"/>
  </layoutDesc>
</objectDesc>

```

<objectType> contains a word or phrase describing the type of object being referred to.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element objectType
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<physDesc>
  <p> Paper and vellum <objectType>codex</objectType> in modern cloth binding.</p>
</physDesc>
```

Example

```
<physDesc>
  <p>Fragment of a re-used marble <objectType>funerary stele</objectType>.
</p>
</physDesc>
```

Note The ref attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of object, defined either internally or externally.

<occupation> contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.datable`
(`att.datable.w3c` (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`))
(`att.datable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`))
`att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`,
`@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`)))
(`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.naming` (`@role`, `@nymRef`) (`att.canonical`
(`@key`, `@ref`))

`@scheme` identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use by supplying the
identifier of a `<taxonomy>` element elsewhere in the header.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values must identify a `<taxonomy>` element

`@code` identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or
taxonomy defined by the scheme attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values Must identify a `<category>` element

Used by `model.persStateLike`

May contain

`analysis:` `c` `pc` `w`

`core:` `address` `cb` `choice` `date` `emph` `foreign` `gap` `graphic` `hi` `index` `lb` `milestone`
`note` `pb` `ref` `rs` `term` `time` `title`

`figures:` `formula`

`gaiji:` `g`

`header:` `idno`

`iso-fs:` `fLib` `fs`

`linking:` `anchor`

`msdescription:` `catchwords` `depth` `dim` `dimensions` `height` `heraldry` `locus` `locusGrp`
`material` `objectType` `origDate` `origPlace` `secFol` `signatures` `stamp` `watermark`
`width`

`namesdates:` `addName` `affiliation` `country` `forename` `genName` `geo` `geogFeat`
`nameLink` `offset` `orgName` `persName` `roleName` `settlement` `surname`

`textcrit:` `app` `witDetail`

`transcr:` `addSpan` `delSpan` `gb` `surplus`

`verse:` `caesura` `rhyme`

Declaration

```

element occupation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute code { xsd:anyURI }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<occupation>accountant</occupation>
```

Example

```
<occupation  
  scheme="http://www.ons.gov.uk/about-http://www.ons.gov.uk/about-statistics  
/classifications/current/ns-sec/"  
  code="#acc">accountant</occupation>
```

Example

```
<occupation  
  scheme="http://www.ons.gov.uk/about-http://www.ons.gov.uk/about-statistics  
/classifications/current/ns-sec/"  
  code="#acc">accountant with specialist  
knowledge of oil industry </occupation>
```

Note The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

<offset> that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.offsetLike

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element offset  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<placeName key="NRPA1">  
  <offset>50 metres below the summit of</offset>  
  <geogName>  
    <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat>  
    <name>Sinai</name>  
  </geogName>  
</placeName>
```

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

Module textstructure

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

Used by `model.divTopPart`

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
textstructure: byline dateline epigraph salute signed
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | byline
    | dateline        | epigraph         | salute          | signed          | model.global  ) *
}
```

Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented
me from
earlier enquiring...</p>
```

<org> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
 @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
 @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
 (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@role specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.

Status Optional

Datatype 1- occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`

separated by whitespace

Values one or more keywords separated by spaces

Used by listOrg model.personLike

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p rs

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: addName country forename genName geogFeat nameLink offset org
 orgName persName person personGrp place roleName settlement surname

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element org
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute role
  {
    list
    {
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" },
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }*
    }
  }?,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( model.pLike* )
      | ( model.labellike | model.nameLike | model.placeLike )*
    ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    model.personLike*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<org xml:id="JAMs">
  <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName>
  <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <persName>Hagbard
    Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden submarine, the
    <name>Leif Ericson</name>

```

```

</desc>
<bibl>
  <author>Robert Shea</author>
  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author>
  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title>
</bibl>
</org>

```

Note May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the `model.personPart` class.

<orgName> (organization name) contains an organizational name.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
 (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.datable`
 (`att.datable.w3c` (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`))
 (`att.datable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`))
`att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`,
`@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`)))
 (`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.personal` (`@full`, `@sort`) (`att.naming` (`@role`,
`@nymRef`) (`att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`))) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

Used by `model.nameLike.agent`

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element orgName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the
<orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary">
  <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society
</orgName>....
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

Module core

Used by model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element orig { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```
<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>
```

<origDate> (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable
(att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element origDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

```
<origDate notBefore="--0300" notAfter="--0200">3rd century BCE</origDate>
```

<origPlace> (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element origPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

<origPlace>Birmingham</origPlace>

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish different kinds of “origin”, for example original place of publication, as opposed to original place of printing.

<origin> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript or manuscript part.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter,

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

@from, *@to*) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*))

Used by history

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element origin
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<origin
  notBefore="1802"
  notAfter="1845"
  evidence="internal"
  resp="#AMH">Copied in <name type="origPlace">Derby</name>, probably from an
old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to
<persName xml:id="AMH">Anne-Anne-Mette Hansen</persName>.
</origin>
```

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)

(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*))

Used by model.pLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element pb { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said. <q>What have  
you  
done?</q>  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied  
Thjostolf.  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.  
</p>  
<p>  
<q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q>  
</p>
```

<pb/> (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype) att.sourced (@ed) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Used by model.milestoneLike

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element pb  
{
```

```
    att.global.attributes,  
    att.global.attributes,  
    att.typed.attributes,  
    att.sourced.attributes,  
    att.spanning.attributes,  
    att.breaking.attributes,  
    empty  
}
```

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>  
... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>  
... </p>
```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the `fac` attribute

```
<body>  
  <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>  
  <p/>  
  <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>  
  <p/>  
</body>
```

Note By convention, `<pb>` elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer. The global `n` attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the `<pb>` element itself. The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

<pc> (punctuation character) a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

Module analysis

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.segLike`
(`@function`, `@part`) (`att.metrical` (`@met`, `@real`, `@rhyme`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator

inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Used by `model.segLike`

May contain

analysis: c
gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute pre { xsd:boolean }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c )*
}
```

Example

```
<phr>
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
  <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

Note .

<performance> contains a section of front or back matter describing how a dramatic piece is to be performed in general or how it was performed on some specific occasion.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.frontPart.drama

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb
q quote sp stage
dictionaries: entry superEntry
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace
textcrit: listWit witDetail
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element performance
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<performance>
  <p>
    <rs type="place">Gateway Theatre, Edinburgh</rs>, <date>6 September 1948</date>
    <castList>
      <castItem>
        <role>Anath Bithiah</role>
        <actor>Athene Seyler</actor>
      </castItem>
      <castItem>
        <role>Shendi</role>
        <actor>Robert Rietty</actor>
      </castItem>
    </castList>
  </p>
  <p>Directed by <name>E. Martin Browne</name>
</p>
</performance>

```

Example

```

<performance>
  <p>Cast of the original production at the <rs type="place">Savoy Theatre,
London,</rs> on
  <date>September 24, 1907</date>
  <castList>
    <castItem>Colonel Hope : Mr A.E.George</castItem>
  </castList>
</p>
</performance>

```

Note contains paragraphs and an optional cast list only.

<persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including any or all of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable
 (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
 att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
 @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
 (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role,
 @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.persStateLike model.nameLike.agent

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element persName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Edward</forename>
  <forename>George</forename>
  <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of
  <placeName>Knebworth</placeName>
</roleName>
</persName>
```

<person> provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Role specifies a primary role or classification for the person.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:Name` separated by whitespace

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file

@sex specifies the sex of the person.

Status Optional

Datatype `"0" | "1" | "2" | "9"`

@age specifies an age group for the person.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file; possibilities include infant, child, teen, adult, and senior.

Used by model.personLike

May contain

core: bibl cb gap index lb milestone note p pb

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

namesdates: affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit

langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus
trait

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element person
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute role { list { xsd:Name, xsd:Name* } }?,
  attribute sex { "0" | "1" | "2" | "9" }?,
  attribute age { xsd:Name }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global ) * )
}
```

Example

```
<person sex="2" age="mid">
  <p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of
  unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic
  status B2.</p>
</person>
```

Example

```
<person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet">
  <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>
  <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>
  <birth when="--0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>
    <country key="IT">Italy</country>
  </placeName>
</birth>
  <death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>
    <country key="RO">Romania</country>
  </placeName>
```

```
</death>
</person>
```

Note May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the `model.personPart` class.

<personGrp> (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

@role specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file

@sex specifies the sex of the participant group.

Status Optional

Datatype `("0" | "1" | "2" | "9") | "mixed"`

@age specifies the age group of the participants.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file

@size specifies the size or approximate size of the group.

Status Optional

Datatype 1- occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }`

separated by whitespace

Values may contain a number and an indication of accuracy, e.g. approx 200

Used by `model.personLike`

May contain

core: `bibl p`

namesdates: `affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit`

`langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus`

`trait`

Declaration

```
element personGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute role { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute sex { ( "0" | "1" | "2" | "9" ) | "mixed" }?,
  attribute age { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute size
  {
```

```

    list
    {
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" },
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }*
    }
  }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.personPart* )
}

```

Example

```

<personGrp
  xml:id="pg1"
  role="audience"
  sex="mixed"
  size="approx 50"/>

```

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination. The global xml:id attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the who attribute is specified on individual utterances.

<physDesc> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialised elements from the model.physDescPart class.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by msDesc msPart

May contain

core: p
 msdescription: accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation
 objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

Declaration

```

element physDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike*, ( model.physDescPart_sequenceOptional ) )
}

```

Example

```

<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
    <supportDesc material="perg">
      <support>Parchment.</support>
      <extent>i + 55 leaves
      <dimensions scope="all" type="leaf" unit="inch">
        <height>7¼</height>
        <width>5</width>
      </dimensions>
    </extent>
  </supportDesc>
</physDesc>

```



```

<layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
</layoutDesc>
</objectDesc>
<handDesc>
  <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
</handDesc>
<decoDesc>
  <p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
</decoDesc>
</physDesc>

```

<place> contains data about a geographic location

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
 @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
 @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
 (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Used by model.placeLike

May contain

- core: bibl biblStruct head label note p
- header: biblFull
- msdescription: msDesc
- namesdates: climate country event listPlace location place population
 settlement terrain trait
- textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element place
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( model.pLike* )
      | (
          model.labellike           | model.placeStateLike
          | model.placeTraitLike    | model.placeEventLike
        )
      ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<place>
  <country>Lithuania</country>
  <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>
</place>
  <settlement>Vilnius</settlement>

```

```

</place>
<place>
  <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>
</place>
</place>

```

<population> contains information about the population of a place.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable
 (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
 att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
 @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
 (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical
 (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by population model.placeTraitLike

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: population

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element population
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labellike+ ) ),
      ( model.notelike | model.biblLike )*
    )?,
    population*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<population when="2001-2001-04" resp="#UKCensus">
  <population type="white">
    <desc>54153898</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="asian">
    <desc>11811423</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="black">
    <desc>1148738</desc>

```

```

</population>
<population type="mixed">
  <desc>677117</desc>
</population>
<population type="chinese">
  <desc>247403</desc>
</population>
<population type="other">
  <desc>230615</desc>
</population>
</population>

```

<pos> (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a dictionary headword such as noun, verb, or adjective.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.lexicographic` (`@expand`, `@norm`, `@split`, `@value`, `@orig`, `@location`, `@mergedIn`, `@opt`)

Used by `gramGrp` `model.entryPart` `model.gramPart`

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element pos
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>isotope</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

<postscript> contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.divBottomPart

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.common ) | ( model.global ) ) *
}
```

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
  logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
  the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
  axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
```

```
<signed>Seymour</signed>
</closer>
<postscript>
  <label>P.S.</label>
  <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
</postscript>
</div>
```

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.teiHeaderPart

May contain

transcr: handNotes

Declaration

```
element profileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.profileDescPart* )
}
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc>. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

<prologue> contains the prologue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.frontPart.drama

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb
q quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: listWit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element prologue
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<prologue>
  <sp>
    <l>Wits, like physicians never can agree,</l>
    <l>When of a different society.</l>
    <l>New plays are stuffed with wits, and with deboches,</l>
    <l>That crowd and sweat like cits in May-Day coaches.</l>
  </sp>
  <trailer>Written by a person of quality</trailer>
</prologue>
```

<provenance> contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dateable
(att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))

Used by history

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element provenance
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<provenance>Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788.</provenance>
<provenance>Sold at Sothebys in 1899.</provenance>
```

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role,
@nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by docImprint model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
  
```

Example

```

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
  
```

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: address date p pubPlace publisher
 header: authority availability idno

Declaration

```

element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}
  
```

Example


```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Note Although not enforced by the schemas, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

Module core

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

Used by *docImprint* *model.imprintPart* *model.publicationStmtPart*

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element publisher { att.global.attributes,
--

att.global.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}

Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

<q> (separated from the surrounding text with quotation marks) contains material which is marked as (ostensibly) being somehow different than the surrounding text, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.ascribed (@who)

@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Recommended when applicable

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **spoken** representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written quotation from a written source

soCalled authorial distance

foreign (foreign words)

distinct (linguistically distinct)

term (technical term)

emph (rhetorically emphasized)

mentioned referring to itself, not its normal referant

Used by model.qLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text by quotation marks for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of rend that indicates the use of quotation marks.

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

Used by model.quoteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element quote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
Lexicography has
shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably
best summarized in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

<rdg> (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.textCritical (@wit,
@type, @cause, @varSeq, @hand) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Used by model.rdgLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element rdg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | model.global     | model.rdgPart   )*
```

Example

```
<rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
```

<rdgGrp> (reading group) within a textual variation, groups two or more readings perceived to have a genetic relationship or other affinity.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.textCritical (@wit,
@type, @cause, @varSeq, @hand) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Used by app rdgGrp

May contain

textcrit: lem rdg rdgGrp wit

Declaration

```
element rdgGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  ( ( ( rdgGrp, wit? ) | ( ( lem, wit? )?, ( model.rdgLike, wit? ) )*)+ )
}
```

Example

```

<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Ra2">though</lem>
  <rdgGrp type="orthographic">
    <rdg wit="#Hg">thogh</rdg>
    <rdg wit="#La">thouhe</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>

```

Note May contain readings and nested reading groups. Note that only one <lem> element may appear within a single apparatus entry, whether it appears outside a <rdgGrp> element or within it.

<re> (related entry) contains a dictionary entry for a lexical item related to the headword, such as a compound phrase or derived form, embedded inside a larger entry.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by model.entryPart.top model.entryPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title
 dictionaries: def etym form gramGrp re sense usg xr
 figures: formula
 gaiji: g
 header: idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element re
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
  | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top

```

```

| model.phrase | model.global )*
}

```

Example The following example from *Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary* (Springfield, Mass.: G. & C. Merriam Company, 1975) shows a single related entry for which no definition is given, since its meaning is held to be readily derivable from the root entry:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>neu·ral</orth>
    <pron>'n(y)ūr- 'n(y)ūr-əl</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>of, relating to, or affecting a nerve or the nervous system</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2"> ... </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth>neurally</orth>
      <pron extent="suffix">--ə-lē</pron>
    </form>
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>adv</pos>
    </gramGrp>
  </re>
</entry>

```

Example The following example from *Diccionario de la Universidad de Chicago Inglés-Español y Español-Inglés / The University of Chicago Spanish Dictionary*, Fourth Edition, compiled by Carlos Castillo and Otto F. Bond (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987) shows a number of related entries embedded in the main entry. The original entry resembles the following:

abeja [a · bé · xa]*f.* bee; **abejera** [a · be · xé · ra]*f.* beehive; **abejón** [a · be · xóon]*m.* drone; bumblebee; **abejorro** [a · be · xó · rro]*m.* bumble bee.

One encoding for this entry would be:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gen>f. </gen>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1.">
    <usg type="domain"> (ento.) </usg>
    <def> bee </def>. </sense>
  <sense n="2.">
    <def> busy bee, hard worker </def>. </sense>
  <sense n="3.">
    <usg orig="A." type="domain"> (astron.) </usg>, <def> Musca </def> – </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth orig="a. albanila"> abeja albanila </orth>, </form>
    <sense>
      <def>mason bee</def>;</sense>
    </re>

```

```

<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. carpintera"> abeja carpintera </orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>carpenter bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth xml:id="re-re-o3" orig="a. reina or maestra"> abeja reina </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-#re-o4"> abeja maestra </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def> queen bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth xml:id="re-re-o4" orig="a. neutra or obrera"> abeja neutra </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-#re-o3"> abeja obrera </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>.</sense>
</re>
</entry>

```

Example In the much larger Simon & Schuster Spanish-English dictionary (Tana de Gámez, ed., *Simon and Schuster's International Dictionary* (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1973).) these derived forms of *abeja* are treated as separate main entries, but there are other embedded phrases shown as <re>s in its main entry for *abeja*:

abeja, f. 1. (ento.) bee. 2. busy bee, hard worker. 3. (astron.) A., *Musca*.
 — a. albanila, mason bee; a. carpintera, carpenter bee; a. reina or maestra, queen bee; a. neutra or obrera, worker bee.

This entry may be encoded thus:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gen>f.</gen>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1.">
    <usg type="domain">(ento.)</usg>
    <def>bee</def>.</sense>
  <sense n="2.">
    <def>busy bee, hard worker</def>.</sense>
  <sense n="3.">
    <usg orig="A." type="domain">(astron.)</usg>, <def>Musca</def> – </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth orig="a. albanila">abeja albanila</orth>, </form>
    <sense>
      <def>mason bee</def>; </sense>
  </re>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth orig="a. carpintera">abeja carpintera</orth>, </form>
    <sense>
      <def>carpenter bee</def>; </sense>
  </re>
  <re>
    <form>

```



```
<orth xml:id="re-re-o1" orig="a. reina or maestra">abeja reina</orth>
<orth mergedIn="#re-#re-o1">abeja maestra</orth>
</form>
<sense>
  <def>queen bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth xml:id="re-re-o2" orig="a. neutra or obrera">abeja neutra</orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-#re-o2">abeja obrera</orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>. </sense>
  </re>
</entry>
```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. Identical in sub-elements to an <entry> tag, and used where a dictionary has embedded information inside one entry which could have formed a separate entry. Some authorities distinguish related entries, run-on entries, and various other types of degenerate entries; no such typology is attempted here.

<recordHist> (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript description itself.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by adminInfo

May contain

core: p
header: change
msdescription: source

Declaration

```
element recordHist
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( source, change* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<recordHist>
  <source>
    <p>Derived from <ref target="#IMEV">IMEV 123</ref> with additional research
      by P.M.W.Robinson</p>
  </source>
  <change when="1999-1999-06-23">
    <name>LDB</name> (editor)
    checked examples against DTD version 3.6
  </change>
</recordHist>
```

<ref> (takes the function of ref and ptr. Can therefore also be empty) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.pointing (@target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@target (The target of this pointer / reference) specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Required

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. **TEI%20Consortium**.

Used by monogr model.ptrLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element ref
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute target { xsd:anyURI },
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Schematron

```

<s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the
attributes 'target' and 'cRef' may be supplied.</s:report>

```

Example

```
<ref
  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"> See especially the second
sentence</ref> See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.
```

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

Module core

Used by model.choicePart

May contain

- analysis: c pc w
- core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
- drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
- figures: formula table
- gaiji: g
- header: biblFull idno
- iso-fs: fLib fs
- linking: anchor
- msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
- namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
- textcrit: app listWit witDetail
- transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
- verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element reg { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
```

```
</choice>
</q>
```

<relation> (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of participants.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

@type categorizes the relationship in some respect, e.g. as social, personal or other.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **social** relationship concerned with social roles

personal relationship concerned with personal roles, e.g. kinship, marriage, etc. [Default]

other other kinds of relationship

@name supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.

Status Required

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values an open list of application-dependent keywords

@passive identifies the “passive” participants in a non-mutual relationship.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

@active identifies the “active” participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

@mutual supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

Used by listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace relationGrp

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element relation
{
```

```
att.global.attributes,  
att.global.attributes,  
att.dataable.attributes,  
att.editLike.attributes,  
att.naming.attributes,  
attribute type { "social" | "personal" | "other" | xsd:Name }?,  
attribute name { xsd:Name },  
attribute passive { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?,  
(  
  attribute active { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?  
  | attribute mutual { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?  
)  
}
```

Schematron

```
<s:report test="@active and @mutual">Only one of the attributes  
'active' and 'mutual' may be supplied</s:report>
```

Schematron

```
<s:report test="@passive and not(@active)">the attribute 'passive'  
may be supplied only if the attribute 'active' is  
supplied</s:report>
```

Example

```
<relation  
  type="social"  
  name="supervisor"  
  active="#p1"  
  passive="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4.

Example

```
<relation type="personal" name="friends" mutual="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends.

Note Only one of the attributes active and mutual may be supplied; the attribute passive may be supplied only if the attribute active is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages.

<relationGrp> (relation group) provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype)

Used by listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

May contain

core: p
namesdates: relation

Declaration

```

element relationGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | relation+ )
}

```

Example

```

<listPerson>
  <person xml:id="p1"/>
</listPerson>
<relationGrp type="personal">
  <relation name="parent" active="#p1 #p2" passive="#p3 #p4"/>
  <relation name="spouse" mutual="#p1 #p2"/>
</relationGrp>
<relationGrp type="social">
  <relation name="employer" active="#p1" passive="#p3 #p5 #p6 #p7"/>
</relationGrp>

```

The persons with identifiers p1 and p2 are the parents of p3 and p4; they are also married to each other; p1 is the employer of p3, p5, p6, and p7.

Example

```

<relationGrp>
  <p>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</p>
</relationGrp>

```

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements.

<repository> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Used by altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```

element repository
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.xtext}

```

Example

```

<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>

```

```
<idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

<residence> (residence) describes a person's present or past places of residence.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable
(att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
@precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical
(@key, @ref))

Used by model.persStateLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element residence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<residence>Childhood in East Africa and long term resident of Glasgow,
Scotland.</residence>
```

Example

```
<residence notAfter="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region, Matabele
land</residence>
```

```
<residence notBefore="1903" notAfter="1996">
  <placeName>
    <settlement>Glasgow</settlement>
    <region>Scotland</region>
  </placeName>
</residence>
```

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.docStatus
(@status)

Used by teiHeader

May contain

core: list
header: change

Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | change+ )
}
```

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Note If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line.

Module verse

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype)

@label provides a label to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

Status Recommended

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }
```

Values usually contains a single letter.

Note Within a particular scope, all <rhyme> elements with the same value for their label attribute are assumed to rhyme with each other. The scope is defined by the nearest ancestor element for which the rhyme attribute has been supplied.

Used by model.lPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element rhyme
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute label { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<lg rhyme="abababcc">
  <l>'Tis pity learned virgins ever <rhyme label="a">wed</rhyme>
  </l>
  <l>With persons of no sort of edu<rhyme label="b">cation</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Or gentlemen, who, though well born and <rhyme label="a">bred</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Grow tired of scientific conver<rhyme label="b">sation</rhyme>:</l>
  <l>I don't choose to say much on this <rhyme label="a">head</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>I'm a plain man, and in a single <rhyme label="b">station</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>But – Oh! ye lords of ladies inte<rhyme label="c">llectual</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Inform us truly, have they not hen-<rhyme label="a">peck'd you all</rhyme>?</l>
</lg>
```

<role> the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list.

Module drama

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.castItemPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element role { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<role xml:id="jt">Joan Trash</role>  
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>
```

Note It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this ID is referred to by who attributes on many other elements.

<roleDesc> (role description) describes a character's role in a drama.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by castGroup model.castItemPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element roleDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>
```

<roleName> contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.personal (@full,
@sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed
(@type, @subtype)

Used by model.persNamePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element roleName
{

```

```
att.global.attributes,
att.global.attributes,
att.personal.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>William</forename>
  <surname>Poulteny</surname>
  <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName>
</persName>
```

Note A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

<ROW> contains one row of a table.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)

Used by table

May contain

figures: cell

Declaration

```
element row
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  cell+
}
```

Example

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

<RS> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

@type (You must indicate the type of the referring string) indicates more specifically the object referred to by the referencing string. Values might include person, place, ship, element etc.

Status Required

Datatype xsd:Name

Values Any string of characters.

Legal values are: **person** (natural person)

figure (literary figure)

geographic-entity (self explanatory)

organization (any type of organization)

other

Used by model.nameLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element rs
{
  attribute type
  {
    "person" | "figure" | "geographic-entity" | "organization" | "other"
  },
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said <rs type="person">his
lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>

```

<rubric> contains the text of any *rubric* or heading attached to a particular manuscript item, that is, a string of words through which a manuscript signals the beginning of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, which is in some way set off from the text itself, usually in red ink, or by use of different size or type of script, or some other such visual device.

Module msdescription

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type,
@subtype)

Used by msItemStruct model.msQuoteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element rubric
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<rubric>Nu koma Skyckiu Rym<expan>ur</expan>.</rubric>
<rubric>Incipit liber de consciencia humana a beatissimo Bernardo editus.</rubric>
<rubric>
  <locus>16. f. 28v in margin: </locus>Dicta Cassiodori
</rubric>
```

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by closer opener model.divWrapper

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element salute
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will vouchsafe the readinge.**</salute>**

<scriptDesc> contains a description of the scripts used in a manuscript or similar source.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

core: p
header: scriptNote
msdescription: summary

Declaration

```
element scriptDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, scriptNote+ ) )
}

```

Example

<scriptDesc>
<p/>
</scriptDesc>

Example

```
<scriptDesc>
  <summary>Contains two distinct styles of scripts </summary>
  <scriptNote xml:id="style-style-1">.</scriptNote>
  <scriptNote xml:id="style-style-2">.</scriptNote>
</scriptDesc>
```

<scriptNote> describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript or similar resource.

Module header

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) *(att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) *(att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) *att.handFeatures*
(@scribe, *@scribeRef*, *@script*, *@scriptRef*, *@medium*, *@scope*)

Used by scriptDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
 title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: figure formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element scriptNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<scriptNote scope="sole"/>
```

<seal> contains a description of one seal or similar attachment applied to a manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))

@contemporary specifies whether or not the seal is contemporary with the item to which it is affixed

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"`

Used by sealDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: decoNote

Declaration

```
element seal
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  attribute contemporary { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" }?,
  ( model.pLike | decoNote )+
}
```

Example

```
<seal n="2" type="pendant" subtype="cauda_duplex">
  <p>The seal of <name>Jens Olufsen</name> in black wax.
  (<ref>DAS 1061</ref>). Legend: <q>S IOHANNES OLAVI</q>.
  Parchment tag on which is written: <q>Woldorp Iohanne G</q>.</p>
</seal>
```

<sealDesc> (seal description) describes the seals or other external items attached to a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <seal> elements, possibly with additional <decoNote>s.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

core: p

msdescription: condition decoNote seal

Declaration

```
element sealDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

    ( model.pLike+ | ( decoNote | seal | condition )+ )
}

```

Example

```

<sealDesc>
  <seal type="pendant" contemporary="true">
    <p>Green wax vertical oval seal attached at base.</p>
  </seal>
</sealDesc>

```

Example

```

<sealDesc>
  <p>Parchment strip for seal in place; seal missing.</p>
</sealDesc>

```

<secFol> (second folio) The word or words taken from a fixed point in a codex (typically the beginning of the second leaf) in order to provide a unique identifier for it.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title
 figures: formula
 gaiji: g
 header: idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element secFol
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<secFol>(con-(con-)versio morum</secFol>

```

<sense> groups together all information relating to one word sense in a dictionary entry, for example definitions, examples, and translation equivalents.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt)

@level gives the nesting depth of this sense.

Status Optional

Datatype

xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal

Values a positive integer

Used by entry re sense model.entryPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

dictionaries: def etym form gramGrp re sense usg xr

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element sense
{
  attribute level
  {
    xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
  }?,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top
    | model.phrase    | model.global  )*
```

Example

```
<sense n="2">
  <usg type="time">Vx.</usg>
  <def>Vaillance, bravoure (spécial., au combat)</def>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>La valeur n'attend pas le nombre des années</quote>
```

```
<bibl>
  <author>Corneille</author>
</bibl>
</cit>
</sense>
```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: p title
header: idno

Declaration

```
element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, idno* ) )
}
```

Example

```
<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <idno type="vol">1.2</idno>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

<set> (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction).

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.frontPart.drama

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb
q quote sp stage
dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace
textcrit: listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```
element set
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )* )
}
```

Example

```
<set>
  <p>The action takes place on February 7th between the hours of noon and six in the
  afternoon, close to the Trenartha Tin Plate Works, on the borders of England and
  Wales,
  where a strike has been in progress throughout the winter.</p>
</set>
```

Example

```
<set>
  <head>SCENE</head>
  <p>A Sub-Post Office on a late autumn evening</p>
</set>
```

Example

```
<front>
  <set>
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>TIME</label>
      <item>1907</item>
      <label>PLACE</label>
      <item>East Coast village in England</item>
    </list>
  </set>
</front>
```

Note Contains paragraphs or phrase level tags. This element should not be used outside the front matter; for similar contextual descriptions within the body of the text, use the <stage> element.

<settlement>

Module namesdates

Used by model.placeNamePart

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element settlement { att.global.attributes, text }
```

<sex> specifies the sex of a person.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (att.dateable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))

@value *Status* Optional

Datatype

"0" "1" "2" "9"

Note Values for this attribute are taken from ISO 5218:1977

Representation of Human Sexes; 0 indicates unknown; 1 indicates male; 2 indicates female; and 9 indicates not applicable.

Used by model.persTraitLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element sex
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  attribute value { "0" | "1" | "2" | "9" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<sex value="2">female</sex>
```

Note As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalising attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and

should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text.

< sic > (latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

Module core

Used by model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element sic { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

Example

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and < sic >a Table< / sic > of green fields.

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, < sic > may be used alone:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how < sic >we can< / sic > prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example It is also possible, using the < choice > and < corr > elements, to provide a corrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
– how < choice >
< sic >we can< / sic >
< corr >can we< / corr >
< / choice > prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and < choice >
< sic >a Table< / sic >

```
<corr>a' babbld</corr>  
</choice> of green fields.
```

<signatures> contains discussion of the leaf or quire signatures found within a codex.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element signatures  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<signatures>Quire and leaf signatures in letters, [b]-v, and roman  
numerals; those in quires 10 (1) and 17 (s) in red ink and different  
from others; every third quire also signed with red crayon in arabic  
numerals in the center lower margin of the first leaf recto: "2" for  
quire 4 (f. 19), "3" for quire 7 (f. 43); "4," barely visible, for  
quire 10 (f. 65), "5," in a later hand, for quire 13 (f. 89), "6," in  
a later hand, for quire 16 (f. 113).</signatures>
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword,
dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by closer opener model.divBottomPart

May contain

- analysis: c pc w
- core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title
- figures: formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
- iso-fs: fLib fs
- linking: anchor
- msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
- namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
- textcrit: app witDetail
- transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
- verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element signed
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>

```

<socecStatus> (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable (att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

@scheme identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Values Must identify a <taxonomy> element

@code identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the source attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values Must identify a <category> element

Used by model.persTraitLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element socecStatus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  attribute scheme { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute code { xsd:anyURI }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<socecStatus scheme="#rg" code="#ab1"/>
```

Example

```
<socecStatus>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</socecStatus>
```

Note The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

<sound> describes a sound effect or musical sequence specified within a screen play or radio script.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

@type categorizes the sound in some respect, e.g. as music, special effect, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

@discrete indicates whether the sound overlaps the surrounding speeches or interrupts them.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"`

Note The value true indicates that the sound is heard between the surrounding speeches; the value false indicates that the sound overlaps one or more of the surrounding speeches.

Used by model.stageLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element sound
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  attribute discrete { xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable" }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>Now to business.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford and Zaphod</speaker>
  <p>To business.</p>

```

```

</sp>
<sound discrete="true">Glasses clink.</sound>
<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>I beg your pardon?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford</speaker>
  <p>I'm sorry, I thought you were proposing a toast.</p>
</sp>

```

Note A specialized form of stage direction.

<source> describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript description.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by recordHist

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
 title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element source
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<source>Derived from <ref>Stanley (1960)</ref>
</source>
```

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.declarable (@default)

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct list p
header: biblFull
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace
textcrit: listWit

Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart
      | model.listLike )+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In
    <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

<sp> (speech) An individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

Module core

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.ascribed` (`@who`)

Used by `model.divPart`

May contain

core: `cb` `cit` `gap` `index` `l` `lb` `lg` `milestone` `note` `p` `pb` `q` `quote` `speaker` `stage`
drama: `camera` `caption` `move` `sound` `tech` `view`
iso-fs: `fLib` `fs`
linking: `anchor`
textcrit: `witDetail`
transcr: `addSpan` `delSpan` `gb`

Declaration

```
element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      ( model.lLike | lg | model.pLike | model.stageLike | model.qLike ),
      model.global*
    )+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first
place...</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the
present I
  will forbear...</p>
</sp>
```

Note The `who` attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

Note Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The `who` attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

<speaker> A specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

Module `core`

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

Used by *sp*

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element speaker
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>

```

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

Module core

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.
exit describes an exit.
business describes stage business.
novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.
delivery describes how a character speaks.
modifier gives some detail about a character.
location describes a location.
mixed more than one of the above

Used by model.stageLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element stage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "setting"
    | "entrance"
    | "exit"
    | "business"
    | "novelistic"
    | "delivery"
    | "modifier"
    | "location"
    | "mixed"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example


```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

<stamp> contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dataable (att.dataable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element stamp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/>
SI NON LICET<lb/>
NOBIS RO<lb/>
```

```
manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp>
<lb/>
</rubric>
```

<subc> (subcategorization) contains subcategorization information
(transitive/intransitive, countable/non-countable, etc.)

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.lexicographic
(@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt)

Used by model.entryPart model.gramPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element subc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>médire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <subc>t ind</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

<summary> contains an overview of the available information concerning some aspect of an item (for example, its intellectual content, history, layout, typography etc.) as a complement or alternative to the more detailed information carried by more specific elements.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by decoDesc handDesc history layoutDesc msContents scriptDesc typeDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element summary
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<summary>This item consists of three books with a prologue and an epilogue.
</summary>
```

Example

```
<typeDesc>
  <summary>Uses a mixture of Roman and Black Letter types.</summary>
  <typeNote>Antiqua typeface, showing influence of Jenson's Venetian
    fonts.</typeNote>
  <typeNote>The black letter face is a variant of Schwabacher.</typeNote>
</typeDesc>
```

<superEntry> groups successive entries for a set of homographs.

Module dictionaries

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

In addition to global attributes `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)`
(`att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)`) (`att.global.analytic (@ana)`) (`att.global.facs (@facs)`) `att.entryLike (@type, @sortKey)`

Used by `model.entryLike` `model.entryPart`

May contain

dictionaries: `entry`

Declaration

```
element superEntry
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.entryLike.attributes,
  entry+
}
```

Example

```
<superEntry>
  <form>
    <orth>abandon</orth>
    <hyph>a|ban|don</hyph>
    <pron>@"band@n</pron>
  </form>
  <entry n="1">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>v</pos>
      <subc>T1</subc>
    </gramGrp>
    <sense n="1">
      <def>to leave completely and for ever ... </def>
    </sense>
    <sense n="2"/>
  </entry>
  <entry n="2">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>n</pos>
      <subc>U</subc>
    </gramGrp>
    <def>the state when one's feelings and actions are uncontrolled; freedom from control</def>
  </entry>
</superEntry>
```

<support> contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript.

Module `msdescription`

In addition to global attributes `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)`
(`att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)`) (`att.global.analytic (@ana)`) (`att.global.facs (@facs)`)

Used by `supportDesc`

May contain

analysis: `c pc w`

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element support
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<objectDesc form="roll">
  <supportDesc>
    <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.
  </support>
</supportDesc>
</objectDesc>
```

<supportDesc> (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@material a short project-defined name for the material composing the majority of the support

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Suggested values include: **paper** (paper)

parch (parchment)

mixed

Used by objectDesc

May contain

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

core: p
header: extent
msdescription: collation condition foliation support

Declaration

```
element supportDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute material { "paper" | "parch" | "mixed" | xsd:Name }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( support?, extent?, foliation*, collation?, condition? ) )
}
```

Example

```
<supportDesc>
  <support> Parchment roll with <material>silks</material> ribbons.
</support>
</supportDesc>
```

<surname> contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.personal (@full,
@sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed
(@type, @subtype)

Used by model.persNamePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element surname
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```

att.global.attributes,
att.personal.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>
```

<surplus> (Texte superflu) marks text present in the source which the editor believes to be superfluous or redundant.

Module transcr

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@reason indicates the grounds for believing this text to be superfluous.

Status Optional

Datatype 1- occurrences

of `token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }` separated by whitespace

Values any word describing the difficulty, e.g. *repeated, interpolated* etc.

Used by model.pPart.transcriptional

May contain

- analysis: c pc w
- core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
- drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
- figures: formula table
- gaiji: g
- header: biblFull idno
- iso-fs: fLib fs
- linking: anchor
- msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
- namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
- textcrit: app listWit witDetail
- transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
- verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element surplus
{
  att.global.attributes,

```

```

att.global.attributes,
att.editLike.attributes,
attribute reason
{
  list
  {
    token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" },
    token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }*
  }
}?,
macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

I am dr Sr yrs
<surplus reason="repeated">yrs</surplus>
Sydney Smith

```

<surrogates> contains information about any representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by additional

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
 title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: figure formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element surrogates
{
  att.global.attributes,

```



```
att.global.attributes,  
macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<surrogates>  
  <bibl>  
    <title type="gmd">diapositive</title>  
    <idno>AM 74 a, fol.</idno>  
    <date>May 1984</date>  
  </bibl>  
  <bibl>  
    <title type="gmd">b/w prints</title>  
    <idno>AM 75 a, fol.</idno>  
    <date>1972</date>  
  </bibl>  
</surrogates>
```

<symbol/> (symbolic value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains one of a finite list of symbols.

Module iso-fs

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

`@value` supplies the symbolic value for the feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

Status Required

Datatype

```
token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }
```

Values A string, e.g. *feminine*.

Used by `model.featureVal.single`

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element symbol  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  attribute value { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } },  
  empty  
}
```

Example

```
<f name="gender">  
  <symbol value="feminine"/>  
</f>
```

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

Module figures

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

@rows indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Note Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Note Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Used by model.inter

May contain

core: cb gap head index lb milestone note pb

figures: row

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute rows { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
  attribute cols { xsd:nonNegativeInteger }?,
  ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*, ( row, model.global* )+ )
}

```

Example

```

<table rows="4" cols="4">
  <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
    <cell role="data">36</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>

```

```
<cell role="data">3</cell>
<cell role="data">5</cell>
<cell role="data">20</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Wyndham</cell>
  <cell role="data">1</cell>
  <cell role="data">11</cell>
  <cell role="data">22</cell>
</row>
</table>
```

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global rend attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

<tech> (technical stage direction) describes a special-purpose stage direction that is not meant for the actors.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@type categorizes the technical stage direction.

Status Optional

Legal values are: **light** a lighting cue

sound a sound cue

prop a prop cue

block a blocking instruction

@perf (performance) identifies the performance or performances to which this technical direction applies.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Values The IDREFS are derived from the xml:id attribute on a <performance> element.

Used by model.stageLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

3 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element tech
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "light" | "sound" | "prop" | "block" }?,
  attribute perf { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<tech type="light">Red spot on his face</tech>
```

<teiHeader> (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

Module header

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

@type specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **text** the header is attached to a single text.

[Default]

corpus the header is attached to a corpus.

Used by TEI

May contain

header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}

```

Example

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
    </titleStmt>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

```

<respStmt>
  <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
  <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
  <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
  <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
  <istributor>Oxford Text Archive</istributor>
  <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
  </address>
  <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
    <correction>
      <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
      <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <cRefPattern
      matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(\.*)"
      replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">
      <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that listed here: <list>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
        </item>
        <item>a period</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
        </item>
        <item>a space</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
        </item>
      </list>
    </p>
    </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>

```

```

<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>
  </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.pointing (@target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI

References

Status Optional

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

Used by index model.emphLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element term
{

```

```
att.global.attributes,  
att.global.attributes,  
attribute target { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } }?,  
att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,  
att.canonical.attributes,  
macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

Example

We may define <term xml:id="TDPV" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>

Note This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. As with other members of the `att.canonical` class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the `ref` attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the `key` attribute). Because the mutually exclusive `target` and `cRef` attributes overlap with the function of the `ref` attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

<terrain> contains information about the physical terrain of a place.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.dateable`
(`att.dateable.w3c` (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`))
(`att.dateable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`))
`att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`,
`@precision`, `@scope`)) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`)))
(`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.naming` (`@role`, `@nymRef`) (`att.canonical`
(`@key`, `@ref`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

Used by terrain model.placeTraitLike

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p
header: biblFull
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: terrain
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element terrain
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    terrain*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<place xml:id="KERG">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
  <terrain>
    <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
  </terrain>
</place>

```

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by TEI group

May contain

core: cb gap index lb milestone note pb
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 textcrit: witDetail
 textstructure: back body front group
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb

Declaration

```

element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
  )
}

```


Example

```
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text/>
    <text/>
  </group>
</text>
```

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

<textLang> (text language) in a manuscript description, describes the languages and writing systems identified within the manuscript being described.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@mainLang (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the manuscript.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:language

Values a recognised language “tag” generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a <language> element in the header

@otherLangs (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the manuscript.

Status Optional

Datatype 0– occurrences of xsd:language separated by whitespace

Values a list of codes, each of which is a recognised language “tag” generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a <language> element in the header

Used by msContents msItemStruct model.msItemPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element textLang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute mainLang { xsd:language }?,
  attribute otherLangs { list { xsd:language* } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin  
glosses</textLang>
```

Note Note that this element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global `xml:lang` attribute attached to the element containing the description. The same values should be used to identify languages and writing systems in all cases, and the codes used may be documented further in the `<language>` element.

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

Module core

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.dateable`
(`att.dateable.w3c` (`@period`, `@when`, `@notBefore`, `@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`))
(`att.dateable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`, `@from-iso`, `@to-iso`))
`att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`,
`@precision`, `@scope`)) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`)))
(`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

Used by `model.dateLike`

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula

gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck – <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

Module core

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.canonical (@key,
@ref)

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Recommended when applicable

Legal values are: **a** (analytic) analytic title (article, poem, or other item published as part of a larger item)

m (monographic) monographic title (book, collection, or other item published as a distinct item, including single volumes of multi-volume works)

j (journal) journal title

s (series) series title

u (unpublished) title of unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level “a”, and one appearing within a <series> element

of level “s”. For this reason, the level attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **main** main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

Used by monogr msItemStruct seriesStmt titleStmt model.emphLike model.msQuoteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  
edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full">  
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>  
  <title type="subtitle">an international journal for  
    epistemology, methodology and history of  
    science</title>  
</title>
```

Note The attributes `key` and `ref`, inherited from the class `att.canonical` may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`))

@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values Any string, e.g. *full*, *half*, *Series*, etc.

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the “main” title page of a work.

Used by `msContents` `model.frontPart`

May contain

`core:` `cb` `gap` `graphic` `index` `lb` `milestone` `note` `pb`

`figures:` `figure`

`iso-fs:` `fLib` `fs`

`linking:` `anchor`

`textcrit:` `witDetail`

`textstructure:` `byline` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle`
`epigraph` `imprimatur` `titlePart`

`transcr:` `addSpan` `delSpan` `gb`

Declaration

```
element titlePage  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attributes,  
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
```

```

(
  model.global*,
  ( model.titlepagePart ),
  ( model.titlepagePart | model.global ) *
)
}

```

Example

```

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for <name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>

```

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*)
 (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

@type specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd>Name

Suggested values include: **main** main title of the work [Default]

sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work

alt (alternate) alternative title of the work

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Used by *docTitle* *model.titlepagePart* *model.pLike.front*

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
    Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
    Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
    at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
    <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor title

Declaration

```

element titleStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( title+, model.respLike* )
}

```

Example

```

<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
  transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>

```

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Module textstructure

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by castGroup model.divBottomPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
 width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>

```

<trait> contains a description of some culturally-determined and in principle unchanging characteristic attributed to a person or place.

Module namesdates

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.datable
(att.datable.w3c (@period, @when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
@precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max)))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical
(@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Used by trait model.persTraitLike model.placeTraitLike

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p
header: biblFull
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: trait
textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element trait
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    trait+
    | ( model.headLike*, model.pLike+, ( model.noteLike
    | model.biblLike )* )
    | ( ( model.labellike | model.noteLike | model.biblLike )* )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<trait type="physical">
  <label>Eye colour</label>
  <desc>Blue</desc>
</trait>
```

<typeDesc> contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.physDescPart

May contain

core: p
header: typeNote
msdescription: summary

Declaration

```

element typeDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, typeNote+ ) )
}

```

Example

```

<typeDesc>
  <p>Uses an unidentified black letter font, probably from the
    15th century</p>
</typeDesc>

```

Example

```

<typeDesc>
  <summary>Contains a mixture of blackletter and Roman (antiqua) typefaces</summary>
  <typeNote xml:id="Frak1">Blackletter face, showing
    similarities to those produced in Wuerzburg after 1470.</typeNote>
  <typeNote xml:id="Rom1">Roman face of Venetian origins.</typeNote>
</typeDesc>

```

<typeNote> describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource.

Module header

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.handFeatures
 (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Used by typeDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
 title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: figure formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element typeNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```

<typeNote scope="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong Italianate influence.
</typeNote>

```

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

Module core

In addition to global attributes In addition to global attributes

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1- occurrences

```

of { token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" } }
separated by whitespace

```

Values one or more words describing the difficulty, e.g. faded, background noise, passing truck, illegible, eccentric ductus.

```

<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear
    reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
  </p>
</div>

```

@hand Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:anyURI

Values must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section PHDH).

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype xsd:Name

Sample values include: rubbing damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Used by model.choicePart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element unclear
{
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" },
      token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }*
    }
  }?,
  attribute hand { xsd:anyURI }?,
  attribute agent { xsd:Name }?,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
  
```

Example

and from time to time invited in like manner
 his att<unclear>ention</unclear>

Here the last few letters of the word are hard to read.

Example

<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-background-noise">Nathalie</unclear>
 said ... </u>

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter CE. The <damage>, <gap>, , <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section PHCOMB for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<unicodeName> (unicode property name) contains the name of a registered Unicode normative or informative property.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*))

@version specifies the version number of the Unicode Standard in which this property name is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype `token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }`

Values a valid Unicode version number.

Used by *charProp*

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element unicodeName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } }?,
  text
}
```

Example

```
<unicodeName>character-character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
<unicodeName>general-general-category</unicodeName>
```

Note A definitive list of current Unicode property names is provided in The Unicode Standard.

<usg> (usage) contains usage information in a dictionary entry.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) *att.lexicographic* (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*)

@type classifies the usage information using any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Sample values include: **geo** (geographic) geographic area

time temporal, historical era (archaic, old, etc.)

dom (domain) domain or subject matter (e.g. scientific, literary etc.)

reg (register)

style style (figurative, literal, etc.)

plev (preference level) preference level (chiefly, usually, etc.)

lang (language) name of a language mentioned in etymological or other linguistic discussion.

gram (grammatical) grammatical usage

syn (synonym) synonym given to show use

hyper (hypernym) hypernym given to show usage

colloc (collocation) contains a collocate of the headword.

comp (complement) typical complement
obj (object) typical object
subj (subject) typical subject
verb typical verb
hint unclassifiable piece of information to guide sense choice

Used by entry etym xr model.entryPart.top model.entryPart model.gramPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element usg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}
  
```

Example

```

<form>
  <orth>colour</orth>
  <form>
    <usg type="geo">U.S.</usg>
    <orth>color</orth>
  </form>
</form>
  
```

<value> (value) contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis.

Module gaiji

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by charProp

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element value { att.global.attributes, att.global.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<value>unknown</value>
```

<variantEncoding/> declares the method used to encode text-critical variants.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

@method indicates which method is used to encode the apparatus of variants.

Status Required

Legal values are: **location-referenced** apparatus uses line numbers or other canonical reference scheme referenced in a base text.

double-end-point apparatus indicates the precise locations of the beginning and ending of each lemma relative to a base text.

parallel-segmentation alternate readings of a passage are given in parallel in the text; no notion of a base text is necessary.

Note The value “parallel-segmentation” requires in-line encoding of the apparatus.

@location indicates whether the apparatus appears within the running text or external to it.

Status Required

Legal values are: **internal** apparatus appears within the running text.

external apparatus appears outside the base text.

Note The value “external” is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.

Used by model.encodingDescPart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element variantEncoding
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute method
  {
    "location-referenced" | "double-end-point" | "parallel-segmentation"
  },
  attribute location { "internal" | "external" },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<variantEncoding method="location-location-referenced" location="external"/>
```

<view> describes the visual context of some part of a screen play in terms of what the spectator sees, generally independent of any dialogue.

Module drama

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.stageLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time
title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element view
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<view>
  <name>Max</name> joins his daughter
  at the window. <hi>Rain</hi> sprays his
  face--
</view>
<view>
  <camera>Max's POV</camera> He sees occasional
  windows open, and just across from his apartment
  house, a <hi>man</hi> opens the front door of
  a brownstone--
</view>
```

Example


```

<div type="shot">
  <view>BBC World symbol</view>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Voice Over</speaker>
    <p>Monty Python's Flying Circus tonight comes to you live
      from the Grillomat Snack Bar, Paignton.</p>
  </sp>
</div>
<div type="shot">
  <view>Interior of a nasty snack bar. Customers around, preferably
    real people. Linkman sitting at one of the plastic tables.</view>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Linkman</speaker>
    <p>Hello to you live from the Grillomat Snack Bar.
    </p>
  </sp>
</div>

```

Note A view is a particular form of stage direction.

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

Module analysis

In addition to global attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:space`)
 (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `att.segLike`
 (`@function`, `@part`) (`att.metrical` (`@met`, `@real`, `@rhyme`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)
`@lemma` provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry

form.

Status Optional

Datatype `string`

`@lemmaRef` provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for
 example in an online lexicon.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:anyURI`

Values any valid URI

Used by `w` `model.segLike`

May contain

analysis: `c w`

core: `cb choice gap hi index lb milestone note pb`

gaiji: `g`

iso-fs: `fLib fs`

linking: `anchor`

textcrit: `app witDetail`

transcr: `addSpan delSpan gb surplus`

verse: `caesura rhyme`

Declaration

```

element w
{
  attribute lemma { string }?,
  attribute lemmaRef { xsd:anyURI }?,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,

```

```

att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
att.global.linking.attributes,
att.global.facs.attributes,
att.global.attribute.xmlid,
att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
att.global.linking.attributes,
att.global.facs.attributes,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
(
  text
  | model.gLike      | w      | c      | model.global
  | model.lPart     | model.hiLike | model.pPart.edit )*
}

```

Example

```

<w
  type="verb"
  lemma="hit"
  lem-
  maRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>

```

<watermark> contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by model.pPart.msdesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width

namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element watermark
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<support>
  <p>
    <material>Rag paper</material> with <watermark>anchor</watermark> watermark</p>
</support>
```

<width> contains a measurement measured along the axis parallel to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. perpendicular to the spine of a book or codex.

Module msdescription

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max))

Used by model.measureLike model.dimLike

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element width
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<width unit="in">4</width>
```

Note If used to specify the depth of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the “depth” axis.

<wit> contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Used by app rdgGrp model.rdgPart

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element wit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.rdgPart.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<rdg wit="#El #Hg">Experience</rdg>
<wit>Ellesmere, Hengwryt</wit>
```

Note This element represents the same information as that provided by the wit attribute of the reading; it may be used to record the exact form of the sigla given in the source edition, when that is of interest.

<witDetail> (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.placement
(@place) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.pointing (@target, @evaluate)

@wit (witnesses) indicates the sigil or sigla for the witnesses to which the detail refers.

Status Required

Datatype 1– occurrences of `xsd:anyURI` separated by whitespace

Values the identifier or identifiers of the sigil or sigla.

@type describes the type of information given about the witness.

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:Name`

Values Values can be taken from any convenient typology of annotation suitable to the work in hand; e.g. letter_form, ornament, ...

Used by model.noteLike

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap graphic hi index lb milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark
width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
nameLink offset orgName persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element witDetail
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute wit { list { xsd:anyURI, xsd:anyURI* } },
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<app type="substantive">
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem xml:id="W026x" wit="#E1 #HG">Experience</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>
<witDetail
  target="#W026x"
  resp="#PR"
  wit="#E1"
  type="presentation">Ornamental capital.</witDetail>
```

Note The <witDetail> element should be regarded as a specialized type of <note> element; it is synonymous with <note type='witnessDetail'>, but differs from the in the omission of some attributes seldom applicable to notes within critical apparatus, and in the provision of the wit attribute, which permits an application to extract all annotation concerning a particular witness or witnesses from the apparatus. It also differs in that the location of a <witDetail> element is not significant and may not be used to imply the point of attachment for the annotation; this must be explicitly given by means of the target attribute.

<witEnd/> (fragmented witness end) indicates the end, or suspension, of the text of a fragmentary witness.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Used by model.rdgPart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element witEnd
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.rdgPart.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#E1 #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>
    <witEnd/>
  </rdg>
</app>
```

<witStart/> (fragmented witness start) indicates the beginning, or resumption, of the text of a fragmentary witness.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Used by model.rdgPart

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element witStart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.rdgPart.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#E1 #Hg">Auctoritee</lem>
  <rdg wit="#La #Ra2">auctorite</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#X">
    <witStart/>auctorite</rdg>
</app>
```

<witness> contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil.

Module textcrit

In addition to global attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:space)
(att.global.links (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs))

Used by listWit

May contain

core: address bibl biblStruct choice cit date emph foreign label list q quote ref
rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: table
header: biblFull idno
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
persName roleName settlement surname
textcrit: listWit

Declaration

```
element witness
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

```
<listWit>
  <witness xml:id="EL">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
  <witness xml:id="HG">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
  Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
  <witness xml:id="RA2">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
  (see further <ptr
  target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRP149"/></witness>
</listWit>

```

Note The content of the <witness> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

<xr> (cross-reference phrase) contains a phrase, sentence, or icon referring the reader to some other location in this or another text.

Module dictionaries

In addition to global attributes att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig,
@location, @mergedIn, @opt)

@type indicates the type of cross reference, using any convenient typology.

Status Recommended

Datatype **xsd>Name**

Sample values include: **syn** (synonym) cross reference for synonym information

etym (etymological) etymological information

cf (compare or consult) related or similar term

illus (illustration) illustration of an object

Used by etym model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

May contain

analysis: c pc w
 core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap graphic hi
 index label lb list milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
 dictionaries: usg
 drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
 figures: formula table
 gaiji: g
 header: biblFull idno
 iso-fs: fLib fs
 linking: anchor
 msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp
 material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
 watermark width
 namesdates: addName affiliation country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace nameLink offset orgName
 persName roleName settlement surname
 textcrit: app listWit witDetail
 transcr: addSpan delSpan gb surplus
 verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element xr
{
  attribute type { xsd:Name }?,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | usg | model.global )*
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lavage</orth>
  </form>
  <etym>[Fr. < <mentioned>laver</mentioned>; L. <mentioned>lavare</mentioned>, to
wash;
  <xr>see <ref>lather</ref>
  </xr>]. </etym>
</entry>

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lawful</orth>
  </form>
  <xr type="syn">SYN. see <ref>legal</ref>
  </xr>
</entry>

```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements; usually contains a <ref> or a <ptr> element. This element encloses both the actual indication of the location

referred to, which may be tagged using the <ref> or <ptr> elements, and any accompanying material which gives more information about why the reader is being referred there.